

VOLUME I

Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui

Conservation Management Strategy
2026



All three volumes of Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui Conservation Management Strategy 2026 are available online at doc.govt.nz/te-hiku-cms.

Some of the material in this Conservation Management Strategy can be reused under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International Licence. You may copy, distribute and adapt the material as long as you credit the Department of Conservation and Te Hiku iwi ('Source: Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui Conservation Management Strategy 2026 – Department of Conservation and Te Hiku iwi') and abide by the Creative Commons licence terms (creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0).

Material that is not included in the Creative Commons licence and so may not be copied, distributed or adapted without the permission of the copyright holders is listed below:

All knowledge, artwork, whakataukī, stories and narratives provided by Te Rarawa, Te Aupōuri, Ngāi Takoto and Ngāti Kuri.

Artwork commissioned from Richard Murray, graphic designer, by the Conservation Management Strategy Working Group.



Operative 31 July 2026

ISBN (print): 978-1-0671400-5-2

ISBN (digital): 978-1-0671400-6-9

Kauri (*Agathis australis*). Photo: Alannah Lett

Rārangi upoko

Contents

He tauākī manawhenua Authoritative statement	7	2.3	Ngā ture whakataunga kerēme Tiriti Treaty settlement legislation	25
TE WHAKATAUKĪ A MERI NGĀROTO	10	2.4	Ngā mahere taiao nō ngā iwi me ngā hapū Iwi and hapū environmental management plans	26
Te Moemoeā Vision	11	2.5	Horopaki a te ture Pāremata Statutory context	26
Kupu whakataki Foreword	12	2.6	Te whakamana i ngā whānau me ngā hapū Enabling whānau and hapū	27
TE WHAKATAUKĪ A REV MĀORI MARSDEN	13	3.	Ngā kōrero tuku iho mō Te Hiku Overview of Te Hiku	28
Wahanga Tuatahi – Te Mahi Ngātahi i runga i te Mana Ōrite Part One – Partnership	15	3.1	Ngā hononga o ngā whakataunga Tiriti ki Te Hiku o Te Waka a Māui Interaction with Te Hiku CMS	29
1. Te ara hou A new pathway	16	3.2	He whakamāramatanga Interpretation	29
1.1 Ngā Kaupapa Tuku Iho Inherited values	18	3.3	Ngā ture whakaritenga Bylaws and regulations	31
1.2 Ngā mātāpono me ngā uara Guiding principles and values	20	4.	He hononga ka tuia ki te Tiriti o Waitangi Treaty of Waitangi relationships	32
1.3 Tikanga Māori Māori customary law	21	4.1	Ngā whakataunga Tiriti Treaty settlements	32
HE WHAKATAUKĪ NĀ REV MĀORI MARSDEN	22	4.2	Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here hei whakaū i ngā hononga mō te Tiriti o Waitangi Objectives and policies to uphold and maintain Treaty of Waitangi relationships	34
2. He kupu arataki Introduction	23			
2.1 Te Korowai Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui Conservation Management Strategy	23			
2.2 Te raupapatanga Structure	23			

Wahanga Tuarua – Ngā wāhi
Part Two – Places

39

5.	Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki The Islands	43
5.1	Ngā kōrero mō ngā moutere Overview	44
5.2	Ngā hua Outcomes	46
5.3	Ngā uara, ngā take, ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here mō Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki The Islands: values, issues, opportunities and policies	48
6.	Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki The Dunes	55
6.1	Tirohanga whanui Overview	56
6.2	Ngā hua Outcomes	58
6.3	Ngā uara, ngā a take, ngā whainga me ngā kaupapa here mō Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki The Dunes: values, issues, opportunities and policies	60
7.	Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki The Waters	73
7.1	Ngā kōrero mō ngā wai Overview	74
7.2	Ngā hua Outcomes	76
7.3	Ngā uara, ngā take, ngā kaupapa here mō Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki The Waters: values, issues, opportunities and policies	77

8.	Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki The Forests	87
8.1	Ngā kōrero mō ngā Ngahere Overview	88
8.2	Ngā hua Outcomes	90
8.3	Ngā uara, ngā take, ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here mō Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki The Forest: values, issues, opportunities and policies	92
9.	Ngā tohutohu mō ia wahi Combined milestones for each Place	104

Wahanga Tuatoru – He tirohanga whānui ā-rohe
Part Three – Regional overview

109

10.	Ngā whāinga, ngā kaupapa here me ngā tohutohu ā-motu, ā-rohe National and regional objectives, policies and milestones	110
10.1	Ngā uara taiao Natural values	110
10.2	Ngā uara o mua Historic values	117
10.3	Ngā uara papa rehia Recreational values	121
10.4	Te huringa ahuarangi Climate change	125
10.5	Ngā tohutohu ā-rohe Regional milestones	128

11.	Ngā whakaritenga kaupapa here ā-rohe Regional policy requirements	132	11.14	Ngā kararehe Animals	157
11.1	Ngā kaupapa here whānui ā-rohe General regional policies	132	11.15	Ngā kararehe mohao Wild and game animals	162
11.2	Ngā manurere Aircraft	138	11.16	Ngā hōiho me ngā kau mohao Wild horses and cattle	163
11.3	Ngā pouaka pī Beehives	142			
11.4	Ngā mahi kiriata tauhokohoko, hopu whakaahua, hākinakina whakataetae hoki Commercial filming, photography, and sporting and other competitive events	142	Wahanga Tuawha – Ngā tohu whakatutuki Part Four – Signs of successful implementation		
11.5	Te mahi hī ika me whakangangahu manu Fishing and game bird hunting	145			
11.6	Te mau punga Fixed anchors	146	12.	Te whakatinana, te aroturuki me te pūrongorongo Implementation, monitoring and reporting	166
11.7	Te kaikai a te kararehe me te mahi ahūwhenua Grazing and farming	148	Kupu whakamārama Glossary		
11.8	Mātakitaki whakangote moana Marine mammal viewing	148	Glossary – interpretation		
11.9	Te mahi maina Mining	149	List of appendices in Volume II		
11.10	Ngā whare noho motuhake Private accommodation	150			
11.11	Te unutanga o te oneone, te kirikiri me te kiripōhatu Sand, shingle and gravel extraction	151			
11.12	Ngā hanganga me ngā whaipanga Structures, utilities and facilities	152			
11.13	Ngā waka i te whenua, ngā waka i te wai Vehicles and watercraft	152			



Kiokio / palm-leaf fern (*Blechnum novae-zelandiae*).
Photo: Kylie McDowell

He tauākī manawhenua¹

Authoritative statement

Ko Ranginui e tū iho nei hei tuanui mō te ao,
Ko Papatūānuku e takoto nei hei whāriki mō te rangi

Ka puta, ka ora ki ngā mumu tai, ki ngā whenua wawā, ā rāua tini uri
whakaheke e kōwhaiwhai haere nei i te ao

Ko Tāne-te-waiora ko Tāne-te-pēpeke, ko Tāne-nui-a-Rangi, ko Tāne-te-orooro,

Ko Tāne Mahuta i whakarite i te wehenga ake o ōna mātua kia puta ai
ki te ao mārama.

He tapu anō te ira atua i whakatōngia e Tāne ki roto i tāna i hanga ai
ki tāna i moe ai.

Ka tiakina te mana atua iroto i te whare tangata, kia mau tonu ai te tapu
o te tangata.

Nā Tāne anō ngā rākau me ngā manu – a Raupō, a Kīwī, a Rupe mā, me te tini
o Te Wao Nui ā, marere noa ki ngātakutai moana, ki ngā tini a Tangaroa. Ko te
tangi a te mātui, “tūi, tutuiā” – te rangi ki te whenua, te whenua ki te rangi.

Ka puta ki te whei ao, ki te ao mārama, tihei wā mauriora!

Ko Tūmataunga anō tētahi o ngā tama a Ranginui rāua ko Papatūānuku.
He atua koi, he atua māia, he kaitaki, he toa. Ko ōna hoa ko te taua, ko tana
mahi he karawhiu i runga i te marae ātea me te pakanga. Nā tēnei atua,
nā Tūmataunga ka puta ko āna uri – te tini me te mano o ngā tāngata e tūtū
haere nei ki runga i te mata o te whenua.

He uri whakatupu tātou nō ngā kāwai atua o te ao. He mea paihere ngā uri
a Tāne rāua ko Tūmataunga, ki ngāwhakapapa atua tātai noa ki te ao.

Koia e meatia nei, kia kōrerotia ana te mana o ngā ngahere, ngā whenua
me ngā papamoana o Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui, kia maumahara te tangata
e honohono ana te mauri o ngā mea katoa.

Ka mutu, i konei anō mātou e noho ana hei kaitiaki i te taiao, hei kaitaurima
i te mauri o ngā tapuwae ā-nuku o ō mātou tūpuna. Nā rātou ngā kōrero
i waiho, i tapa hoki ngā ingoa i honohono ai ngā tātai katoa o te ao tūroa.
Kua riro iho i a mātou Ngā Kete o Te Wānanga i tīkina ake rā e Tāne kia whai
māramatanga ai te ira tangata.

Nāna anō te wairua mārama me ngā āhuatanga whakamīharo o te ira atua
i whakatō ki roto i ana uri e tū nei hei tangata whenua tūturu mō Te Hiku
o Te Ika-a-Māui Tikitiki a Taranga ā, puta noa i Aotearoa. Nō muri mai ka
tae mai a Kupe, a Pōhurihanga, a Tamatea, a Nukutawhiti, a Ruanui, a Puhi,
Tūmoana, i ruirui haere ai i te kākano maii Rangiātea, kia kore ai mātou e ngaro.

Ko tōku mana, ko tōku reo Māori ngā kaiwhakamārama i tōku mātauranga
ki te taiao, rere ki uta, rere ki tai ā, taiāwhiowhio noa Ko mātou tonu te hunga
tiaki i ngā mahi tapu a ō mātou tūpuna.

Kei te ture Kāwana te kawenga ki te whakatairanga i ngā tīkanga a te Māori
kia hīkina ake te mana o te iwi meōna hapū hei kaitiaki kia whakatutuki
i te mana tapu kia taurima tonu ai te Wao Nui a Tāne i Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui.

¹ Ngāti Kuri Deed of Settlement 2014, p. 84–86, [whakatau.govt.nz/assets/Treaty-Settlements/FIND_Treaty_Settlements/Ngati_Kuri/DOS_documents/Ngati-Kuri-Deed-of-Settlement-7-Feb-2014.pdf](https://www.whakatau.govt.nz/assets/Treaty-Settlements/FIND_Treaty_Settlements/Ngati_Kuri/DOS_documents/Ngati-Kuri-Deed-of-Settlement-7-Feb-2014.pdf); Te Aupōuri Deed of Settlement 2012, p. 66–68, [govt.nz/assets/Documents/OTS/Te-Aupouri/Te-Aupouri-Deed-of-Settlement-28-Jan-2012.pdf](https://www.govt.nz/assets/Documents/OTS/Te-Aupouri/Te-Aupouri-Deed-of-Settlement-28-Jan-2012.pdf); Ngāi Takoto Deed of Settlement 2012, p. 49–51, [govt.nz/assets/Documents/OTS/NgaiTakoto/Ngai-Takoto-Deed-of-Settlement-27-Oct-2012.pdf](https://www.govt.nz/assets/Documents/OTS/NgaiTakoto/Ngai-Takoto-Deed-of-Settlement-27-Oct-2012.pdf); and Te Rarawa Deed of Settlement 2012, p. 155–157, [whakatau.govt.nz/assets/Treaty-Settlements/FIND_Treaty_Settlements/Te-Rarawa/DOS_documents/Te-Rarawa-Deed-of-Settlement-28-Oct-2012.pdf](https://www.whakatau.govt.nz/assets/Treaty-Settlements/FIND_Treaty_Settlements/Te-Rarawa/DOS_documents/Te-Rarawa-Deed-of-Settlement-28-Oct-2012.pdf).

He kawenata hou tenei tauākī manawhenua hei whakapai ake i ngā mahi whakahaere o aua whenua mā te mahi ngātahi i ngā whenua kei roto i ngā ringaringa o Te Papa Atawhai me ngā hapū, iwi hoki o Te Hiku o Te Ika. Mā tēnei whakaritenga hou ka uru ngā whakaaro Māori, ngā tikanga Māori me ngā tāngata Māori ki roto i ngā mahi a Te Papa Atawhai – mai i te rangatira teitei, te Minita ā, tae noa ki te Tari ā-Rohe. Kua whakaae mai te Kāwanatanga me mātou ki te whai ngākau hou mō te oranga tonutanga i ngā whenua me ngā papamoana o Te Hiku o Te Ika.

Tuturu whakamaua kia tina, hui e, taiki e!

The nature of Manawhenua

Ranginui extends above us as a canopy over the world

Papatūānuku stretches out below, a platform for the heavens

They are adorned with an interwoven tapestry of their myriad descendants, born and reborn, and dispersed amongst the murmuring waters and recesses throughout the scattered lands and oceans of Rangi and Papa.

It was Tāne-te-waiora, Tāne-te-pēpeke, Tāne-te-ororo, Tāne-whakapiripiri, Tāne-Mahuta, Tāne-nui-a-Rangi who instigated the separation of his parents, bringing about the emergence into the World of Light and understanding.

Through the act of conception, Tāne introduced his godliness to those that he created and an aspect of his divinity to those with whom he procreated. The womb transmits and protects this sacred authority maintaining the sanctity of the holistic person.

From Tāne also descended Rākau, Raupō, Kiwi, Rupe and the multitudes of progeny from the mountains to the great forests and unto the oceans. The sky is woven into the land and the land to the sky from whence emerged the world of light, bringing forth the spirit essence of all living things.

Tūmatauenga – another son of Ranginui and Papatūānuku, was astute and brave, an industrious leader and the ultimate warrior. His constant companions are strife and war; he convenes the arena of conflict and the field of battle. The progeny of Tūmatauenga includes all the people who live and occupy the face of the earth.

As descendants of the gods and the progeny of Tāne and Tūmatauenga, we are enmeshed within the genealogies of the pantheon of elemental deities that form the environment.

We speak here of our authority over the lands, forests and oceans of Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui, as the spirit of all things is connected, empowering our ability to speak as guardians of the land, forests and seas, in the pursuit of all that we desire.

We have lived here since time immemorial, as guardians of the environment, fostering the spirits, treading in the footprints of our ancestors who bestowed names between the land and the sky, and laid down a celestial template that encompasses all of nature. Tāne bequeathed to us the Baskets of Knowledge to provide his descendants with an understanding enabling us to exercise power, authority and responsibility. Tāne created his progeny with the attributes of the gods and imbued them with a divine element. These descendants exist now as the indigenous people of Te Hiku o Te Ika a Māui Tikitiki a Taranga and Aotearoa. From the time of the arrival of Kupe, Pōhurihanga, Tamatea, Nukutawhiti, Ruanui, Puhi and Tūmoana, they sowed the sacred seed brought from Rangiātea ensuring our ongoing existence.

My innate authority and my language illuminate my inherited knowledge and responsibility for the environment, from the centre of the land to the oceans and the atmosphere. We are the original occupants and contemporary guardians of those tasks sacred to our ancestors. It is appropriate for Government to acknowledge, respect and support our inherited role, knowledge and practices as the core of conservation management in New Zealand. Better equipped and more empowered iwi and hapū as kaitiaki, introduces an immense additional resource in the management of the great domains of Tāne, and his siblings in Te Hiku o Te Ika.

This is a new covenant setting out a collaborative working arrangement with the iwi and hapū of Te Hiku o Te Ika on their ancestral lands, even though these lands are yet held by the Department of Conservation. This is a new concept that allows for Māori perspectives, practices and people to pervade the workings of the Department of Conservation – from the Minister to the Regional Conservancy. We have together acknowledged iwi manawhenua and a need to begin with new heart to ensure the ongoing sustainability of our lands and our oceans within Te Hiku o Te Ika.

Hold fast and make permanent! Let us come together!

Te Whakataukī a Meri Ngāroto

Unuhia te rito o te harakeke,
kei hea te kōmako, e kō?

Whakatairangitia, rere ki uta, rere ki tai;
ui mai koe ki a au, he aha te mea nui o tēnei ao?
Māku e kī atu: he tangata, he tangata, he tangata!

Remove the centre shoot of the flax
and where will the bellbird be, where?
It will mill around, fly inland, fly seawards; and then
you will ask me, what is the greatest thing in the world?
I will respond by saying: it is people, it is people, it is people!

Meri Ngāroto (nō Te Aupōuri)

Harakeke (*Phormium tenax*). Photo: Kylie McDowell

Te Moemoeā

Vision

This Conservation Management Strategy sets out a collaborative working arrangement between the co-authoring iwi and hapū of Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui and the Department of Conservation Te Papa Atawhai within *Te Korowai*² (Figure 1). We have together acknowledged a need to follow a new pathway to ensure the ongoing sustainability of our lands and oceans within Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui. This pathway is described in section 1 and recognises that people and the natural world are intertwined.

Tuia te korowai ki te huruhuru o te kōmako

Let us weave the feathers of the kōmako into our korowai

The kōmako/korimako/bellbird has been lost from *Te Korowai* for some time due to a range of threats and pests affecting its natural habitat. Our vision acts as not only an aspirational goal but also one that can be actively measured as a cultural indicator.

The famous whakataukī by Meri Ngāroto on the previous page recognises the kōmako as part of the natural environment. To pay respect to this passage, we intend to ensure that, over time, the song of the kōmako is heard once again in *Te Korowai*.

² *Te Korowai*, where referenced in italics, relates to the area where this Conservation Management Strategy applies, from Te Rerenga Wairua/Cape Reinga in the north to northern Hokianga in the south, excluding the Karikari Peninsula.

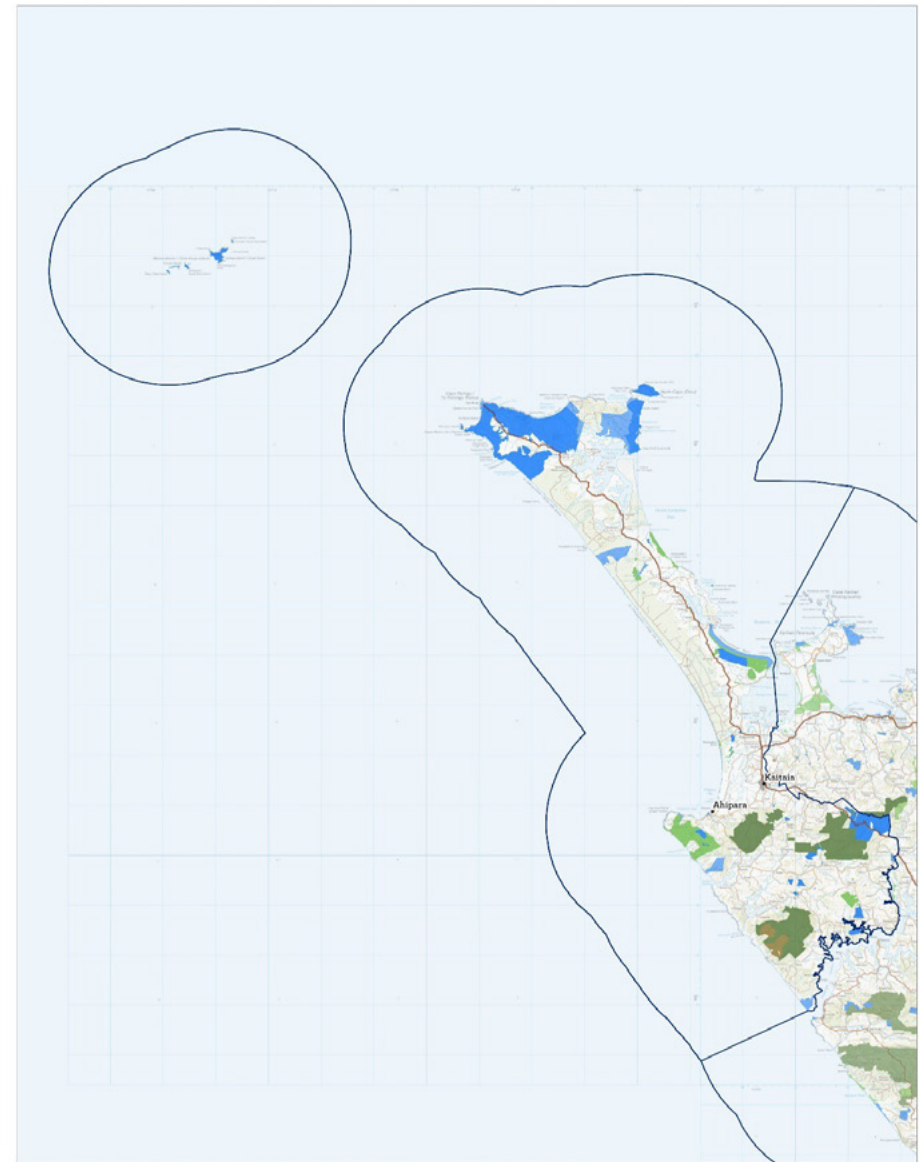


Figure 1: The boundaries of *Te Korowai*
(see Map 1 'Te Hiku Overview' in Volume III)

Kupu whakataki

Foreword

In the breathtaking landscapes of Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui, where mountains pierce the heavens, rivers weave their stories and forests whisper ancient wisdom, the spirit of conservation thrives. This land, with its vibrant tapestry of cultures and its deep-rooted connection to Papatūānuku and Ranginui, provides an extraordinary canvas upon which environmental conservation unfolds.

As we reflect upon the conservation efforts of *Te Korowai*, we are reminded of the profound words of Meri Ngāroto: “He aha te mea nui o te ao? He tāngata, he tāngata, he tāngata.” What is the most important thing in the world? It is people, it is people, it is people. This essence of humanity, intertwined with the natural world, forms the very foundation of conservation and kaitiakitanga.

From the moment of arrival, our ancestors embraced their role as kaitiaki, guardians of the land, guided by Kaupapa Tuku Iho. The wisdom, passed down through generations, honours the interdependent relationship between humans and the environment, recognising that the wellbeing of one is inseparable from the other.

Māori knowledge and practices have shaped the conservation landscape of Te Hiku, inspiring an ethos that is deeply rooted in respect, reciprocity and sustainability. The concept of kaitiakitanga is about entrusted guardianship and care for the natural world. It calls upon us to recognise the intrinsic value of all living beings, the interconnectedness of ecosystems and the importance of maintaining the mauri, the life force that sustains us all.

The profound bond between Māori and the land is interwoven with a commitment to mauri ora, the flourishing of life. This commitment is exemplified through the restoration of wetlands, the rejuvenation of kauri forests and the protection of marine sanctuaries. Māori-led and community

initiatives showcase the power of collaboration between tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), communities and the Government, breathing life into the principle of kotahitanga – unity in purpose.

The Māori world view instils a sense of awe and reverence for the natural world, fostering a deep understanding that the environment is not merely a resource to be exploited but a taonga, a treasure to be cherished. The profound symbolism of the kiwi, the tuatara and other endemic species resonates with Māori legends and stories, reminding us of our collective responsibility to safeguard these ancestral taonga for future generations.

While the Korowai redress (the conservation redress provided for each iwi under their respective Deeds of Settlement and Treaty Claims Settlement Acts) will make remarkable strides in conservation, the challenges that lie ahead are immense. Climate change, biodiversity loss and unsustainable practices threaten the delicate balance of ecosystems.

Within these pages, we invite you to immerse yourself in the richness of Māori conservation traditions, and to journey alongside whānau, hapū and iwi as they weave their knowledge and passion into the fabric of the conservation story for *Te Korowai*. Through this lens, we learn that the pursuit of environmental harmony is a collective endeavour that transcends time and cultures.

May the stories within this strategy ignite a flame within us all – a flame of connection, responsibility and reverence for the natural world.

Te Whakataukī a Rev Māori Marsden

... Te Tiriti O Waitangi
Me ako a tatou tamariki,
kawenata, Te Tiriti O Waitangi,
ona putaketake,

He **Rangatiratanga**,
He **Manaakitanga**,
He **Tohungatanga**,
He **Whanaungatanga**,
He **Ūkaipō**,
Otira, kei tua ko te aka matua,
tona ingoa – **KOTAHITANGA**

The Treaty of Waitangi
We must teach our children,
the covenant of, Te Tiriti O Waitangi,
the root connections being,

The coming Together and **Uplifting**, (People)
The Responsibilities of **Caring**,
The Teachings of **Wisdoms**,
The Maintenance of Kin **Relationships**,
The **Nurturing**,
However, beyond these, is the parent root,
that name is – **UNITY**



Rev. Māori Marsden (1924–1993)

(nō Ngāi Takoto, Ngāpuhi – Ngāti Whārara, Ngāti Korokoro, Te Rarawa, Te Aupōuri, ā, nō te Nōta, nō Te Tai Tokerau)



Kaitiaki ranger holding a kauri branch. *Photo: Kylie McDowell*



WAHANGA TUATAHI

Te Mahi Ngātahi i runga i te Mana Ōrite

PART ONE

Partnership

1. Te ara hou

A new pathway

Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui Conservation Management Strategy (Te Hiku CMS) originated from Treaty settlements with four of the northern iwi of Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui (Te Hiku): Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri, Ngāi Takoto and Te Rarawa. With settlement comes change, and this CMS intends to give effect to the Korowai redress, which aims to improve conservation in Te Hiku in a way that is built on positive, cooperative and enduring relationships.

Kaitiakitanga in Te Hiku has always involved tikanga Māori, and its application is central to Te Hiku CMS, providing the basis for preserving the mauri of all species. Kaitiaki give taonga the highest priority, followed by current and future generations.

Whanaungatanga and whakapapa give rise to the kin relationship between people and taonga and establish obligations across generations. These intergenerational obligations to taonga manifest themselves at many levels, differing between taonga and the various iwi of Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui. However, the kin relationship with our environment is often heard in our whaikōrero when we acknowledge and give praise to our maunga, waterways, lakes, wetlands and harbours, like the praise we would give our whānau and friends.

Our relationship with the environment enables our culture to thrive and evolve and will assist in nurturing and protecting it into the future.

The management approach is that of unity and considering the whole – ki uta ki tai, from the mountains to the sea – with the management regime based on tikanga, tapu, rāhui, noa, and utilising mātauranga Māori and customary practices. Mātauranga Māori is the feedback loop that corresponds to generations of actions and reactions with the environment. Over time, our ability to carry out our functions as kaitiaki has diminished and been taken

away, but with renewed vigour we intend to work collectively for our people, places and environment.

The renewed collaboration between tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the Department of Conservation Te Papa Atawhai in creating Te Hiku CMS has set a new pathway for enhanced conservation and elevates Te Hiku tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) interests in planning and decision making.

Te Hiku CMS directs a shift towards creating a more shared, enduring and collaborative conservation ethic. While we have never forgotten the values and principles associated with kaitiakitanga, we turn our sights to new aspirations following Treaty settlement. This includes restoring our waterways and wetlands, co-managing lands, fauna and flora, reconnecting our tamariki and mokopuna with te taiao and our precious taonga, and reinvigorating our cultural practices.

In this, however, we must also reflect on our current capacity and capability, as well as the ongoing pressure to restore our environment and our people.

Te Hiku CMS provides a means for genuine capacity and capability building, where opportunities and enduring partnerships can be created, leading to a change in the way we do things in the ongoing restoration and protection of our taonga.

These aspirations are already being met head-on, with various iwi environmental plans, taiao groups, specific environmental teams and whānau carrying out numerous projects across Te Hiku landscapes that enhance our natural environment. It is not surprising to see the rejuvenation of our natural environment corresponding to the rejuvenation of our people. The kin relationship with our taonga and natural environment works both ways, and we prosper through healthier people and places.

While Te Hiku CMS originated from Treaty settlements and we have established our case for enhanced conservation, we must find the appropriate balance between meeting our kinship obligations and ensuring that our community can prosper together, within the bounds of our natural environment. People need to see themselves within this CMS or it will not be successful.

Our rohe is unique and is subject to increasing demands on natural resources and space for personal, commercial, cultural and community uses. Existing management frameworks are under pressure to maintain our natural environment, and the list of our taonga that are classified as At Risk or Threatened under the New Zealand Threat Classification System³ is a testament to this.

We as people come and go, but the intention remains that each feather threaded in the korowai creates a cloak of protection and a kaitiakitanga ethic that serves our taonga now and into the future. As we have identified above, the wellbeing of our people is inextricably linked to the welfare of our taonga.

³ nztcs.org.nz



Koru. Photo: Alannah Lett

1.1 Ngā Kaupapa Tuku Iho Inherited values

Every action or activity of Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui iwi (Te Hiku iwi) is sourced in values inherited from our tūpuna Māori called Kaupapa Tuku Iho. It is envisaged that Kaupapa Tuku Iho will give life to the tauākī manawhenua to ensure the ongoing sustainability of the whenua and the moana in Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui.

Kaupapa Tuku Iho acknowledges Te Hiku iwi and hapū mātauranga, tikanga and tangata. These will be infused into the operations of conservation.

The values of Kaupapa Tuku Iho are as follows:

Manaakitanga	Demonstrating behaviour and activities that are mana enhancing towards others, including generosity, care, respect and reciprocity.
Wairuatanga/mauri	Acknowledging and understanding the existence of mauri and a spiritual dimension to life that requires regular attention and nourishment.
Ūkaipōtanga	Caring for and nurturing a context where Māori and others can contribute in ways that strengthen a sense of fulfilment and stimulation.
Whanaungatanga	Expressing relationships that are built on common ancestry and feature interdependence and reciprocal obligations. These relationships provide support and guidance to rōpū tuku iho (whānau, hapū, iwi), as well as other groups of people by whom genealogy is highly regarded.
Rangatiratanga	Reflecting chiefly roles and attributes, being seen as ‘walking the talk’, and showing integrity, humility and honesty.

Kaitiakitanga

Exercising guardianship, deriving from mana whenua, over natural resources, inherited taonga and other forms of wealth, and communities, including Māori and other distinctive cultural groups.

Kotahitanga

Pursuing a unity of purpose and direction where all are able and encouraged to contribute.

Pūkengatanga

Processing knowledge creation, dissemination and maintenance that leads to scholarship and contributes to the mātauranga continuum that is encapsulated by the saying ‘He Kākano i ruia mai i Rangīātea’.

Tātai hono

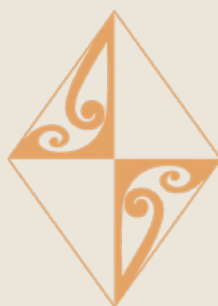
Analysing and synthesising fundamental connectivity (as in genealogy) that highlights the balancing of inter-relationships between people, their heritage and the world around them. Acknowledging the element of whakautu and the reciprocal responsibilities that evolve from it.

Te reo Māori

Using te reo to articulate Māori understanding of the world, just as other cultural groups use their languages to do this. This inherited taonga is essential to the identity and survival of Māori as a people and comes from both the whenua and te taiao.

Mana

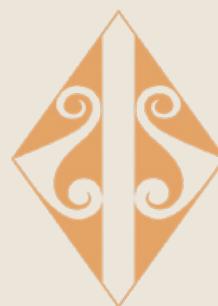
Acknowledging the mana and autonomy of each iwi to operate within their respective rohe in accordance with mana whenua, mana tūpuna, mana moana and manaakitanga. Iwi authorities show commitment to developing strategies regarding shared interests.



Manaakitanga



Wairuatanga/mauri



Ūkaipōtanga



Whanaungatanga



Rangatiratanga



Kaitiakitanga



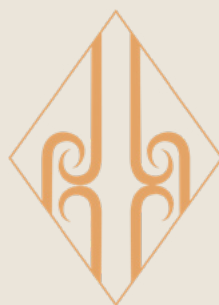
Kotahitanga



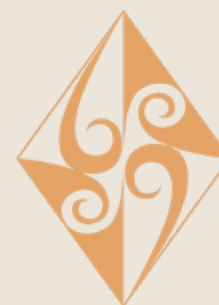
Pūkengatanga



Tātai hono



Te reo Māori



Mana

1.2 Ngā mātāpono me ngā uara Guiding principles and values

He oranga taiao – he oranga tangata
Tiakina e tātou te tapu o tō tātou ūkaipō:
kia pūrena ai te mauri hei oranga pūmau,
kia toitū ai ngā mana o tua whakarere,
kia tuituia ai ngā tātai hono i tēnā, i tēnā,
kia ranea ai te mātauranga hei taonga tuku iho.

Kia korowaitia ngā whakatupuranga o Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui:
ki te **kaitiakitanga**, ki te **wairuatanga**, ki te **māramatanga**,
me te **whanaungatanga**.

Vitality of environment – vitality of people
We need to protect the sanctity of the Earth, our home, which bears and sustains us:
so that life not only continues but thrives,
our culture, sense of belonging and identity are strengthened,
we reinforce our inter-connectedness, and respect and care for one another,
and pass on a base of knowledge that enriches the lives of our descendants.
Let us cloak our future generations of Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui in:
guardianship, spirituality, understanding, and kinship.

Rimu (*Dacrydium cupressinum*). Photo: Alannah Lett

1.3 Tikanga Māori

Māori customary law

The overview of, and background to, the Korowai redress section in each Te Hiku iwi Treaty Claims Settlement Act to date includes the following statement:

Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri, Ngāi Takoto, Te Rarawa, and the Crown are committed under the korowai to establishing, maintaining, and strengthening their positive, co-operative, and enduring relationships, guided by the following principles:

...

f) enabling and supporting the use of te reo Māori and tikanga Māori.

Tikanga Māori is the right or correct way of doing things within Māori society. It consists of traditional knowledge, principles, practices, procedures and processes that underpin social, spiritual, political and legal dimensions of Māori society.

In *Ellis v The King* [2022],⁴ the Supreme Court acknowledged tikanga Māori as the first law of Aotearoa New Zealand and the law that grew from and is very much embedded in our whenua. The Statement of Tikanga adopted by the Court identifies that tikanga principles, concepts, practices and values include but are not limited to:

- manaakitanga and whanaungatanga;
- mana;
- tapu;
- utu;
- noa and ea;
- whakapapa; and
- kaitiakitanga.

The values and principles underlying tikanga are common among Māori. They are universally accepted and are a constant. However, the practice and the manifestation of these principles in particular contexts can vary between different iwi, hapū and whānau.

The intent of the Treaty Claims Settlement Acts is to enable tikanga Māori in a meaningful way. Te Hiku CMS has identified different means of accessing Te Korowai lands and waters⁵ that could be required for cultural activities that are informed by tikanga Māori. This can be seen in the following provisions within this document: Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki | The Islands, Policy 5.3.4.1 regarding motu access; Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki | The Waters, Outcome 7.2.7; section 11.13 'Vehicles and watercraft', descriptive text; 'General vehicles and watercraft', Policy 11.13.2; and 'Horses and other animals', Policy 11.14.14.

The cultural activities informed by tikanga are so broad and varied among iwi that it is not possible to specify all protocols and procedures for all whenua, moana and wai, especially because tikanga develops over time. Examples of activities that are supported by the means of accessing Te Korowai lands and waters outlined in the policies above could be as broad as the translocation of native taonga species for harvesting as kai or the control of invasive pests. Due to the varied and evolving nature of tikanga for Te Hiku iwi, descriptions of tikanga for certain sites can be covered within the relationship agreements between each iwi and Te Papa Atawhai. These relationship agreements will be reviewed regularly.

⁴ Peter Hugh McGregor *Ellis v The King* [2022] SC 49/2019. courtsofnz.govt.nz/assets/cases/2022/2022-NZSC-114.pdf

⁵ The term 'Te Korowai lands and waters' is used in Te Hiku CMS to represent public conservation lands and waters within *Te Korowai*.

He whakataukī nā Rev Māori Marsden

Toi te kupu,
Toi te mana,
Toi te whenua.

When the word is established,
The authority is established, and
The land is secured.

Rev Māori Marsden (nō Ngāi Takoto)

Rarawa Beach. Photo: Alannah Lett

2. He kupu arataki Introduction

2.1 Te Korowai Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui Conservation Management Strategy

Te Hiku CMS has been co-authored by Te Rarawa, Ngāi Takoto and Te Aupōuri of Te Hiku iwi and Te Papa Atawhai. Ngāti Kuri has not participated but is being kept informed each step of the way.

As a result of the co-drafting process, the term ‘Te Korowai lands and waters’ is used to represent public conservation lands and waters within *Te Korowai*.

Te Korowai relates to the region where Te Hiku iwi Treaty settlements apply. *Te Korowai* stretches from Te Rerenga Wairua / Cape Reinga in the north to the northern Hokianga in the south but excludes the Karikari Peninsula to the east. Te Hiku CMS encompasses the areas of interest of Te Hiku iwi, including the coastal marine area out to 12 nautical miles (as shown on Map 1, Volume III).

The objectives, outcomes and policies within Te Hiku CMS apply to the direct management of Te Korowai lands and waters, as well as to advocacy and engagement work for conservation values and species that is carried out by other agencies in other parts of *Te Korowai*. Te Papa Atawhai also needs to comply with other legislative and statutory requirements, such as regional council planning documents, when managing Te Korowai lands and waters.

2.2 Te raupapatanga Structure

Te Hiku CMS is in three volumes:

Volume I Describes the conservation values and issues for *Te Korowai* and how these will be managed. The unique origin of Te Hiku CMS is reflected in the structure of this volume:

Part One

Explains the partnership approach of Te Hiku CMS.

Part Two

Focuses on the four Places:

- Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki | The Islands;
- Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki | The Dunes;
- Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki | The Waters; and
- Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki | The Forests;

and contains the outcomes, policies and milestones for each of these Places. These terms are described in more detail below and in the Glossary.

Part Three

Provides a summary of the national and regional objectives, policies and milestones for Te Tiriti o Waitangi relationships, natural values, historic values and recreational values.

Part Four

Details the monitoring, implementation and reporting requirements of Te Hiku CMS.

Glossaries

Define words and phrases used within Te Hiku CMS.

Volume II Contains appendices that provide further information about the values, opportunities, threats and management approaches referred to in Volume I.

Appendix 1

Te Tiriti o Waitangi relationships in *Te Korowai*

Appendix 2

Work or activities of the Department of Conservation Te Papa Atawhai that may meet the requirements of section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land-use consents

Appendix 3

Important ecosystems and habitats within *Te Korowai*

Appendix 4

Islands over 1 ha administered by the Department of Conservation Te Papa Atawhai in *Te Korowai*

Appendix 5

Priority ecosystem units on Te Korowai lands and waters

Appendix 6

Threats, pests and wild animals within *Te Korowai*

Appendix 7

Threatened and at-risk indigenous flora and fauna in *Te Korowai*

Appendix 8

Marine habitats and ecosystems in *Te Korowai*

Appendix 9

Significant geological features and landforms in *Te Korowai*

Appendix 10

Recreation destinations in *Te Korowai*

Appendix 11

Prescriptions for management of visitor management zones

Appendix 12

Historic sites managed by the Department of Conservation Te Papa Atawhai on Te Korowai lands and waters

Appendix 13

Aircraft use zones

Appendix 14

Taonga species in *Te Korowai*

Appendix 15

The Korowai redress features

Volume III Contains maps and an inventory of Te Korowai lands and waters. The information in Volumes II and III may be amended to keep it accurate (in accordance with section 171 of the Conservation Act 1987).

2.3 Ngā ture whakataunga kerēme Tiriti

Treaty settlement legislation

Several plans and agreements have resulted from Te Hiku iwi Treaty claims settlement legislation. Te Hiku CMS has been informed by, and intends to provide, a link between these documents, which include:

- Te Rautaki o Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē/Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Plan;⁶
- Korowai for Enhanced Conservation Relationship Agreement;⁷
- Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i te Taiao agreement;⁸
- customary materials plans;
- wāhi tapu plans; and
- Te Hiku Iwi Social Development and Wellbeing Accord (2013).⁹

An agreed decision-making framework,¹⁰ customary materials plans and wāhi tapu framework are yet to be created. However, it is intended that these documents will be developed over the lifetime of Te Hiku CMS through genuine partnership.

The decision-making framework, as set out in Treaty settlement legislation,¹¹ is of particular importance to Te Hiku CMS. It sets a clear direction in terms of the process to enable giving effect to section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987.¹²

Te Papa Atawhai and Te Hiku iwi must follow the decision-making framework when a decision is made under the conservation legislation. The framework includes specific provisions for transparent decision making for conservation matters within *Te Korowai*.

Te Papa Atawhai is required under section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987 to interpret and administer the Act in a way that gives effect to the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi. This involves building and supporting effective conservation partnerships with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) at a local level. Giving effect to the Treaty principles and Treaty settlement legislation in Te Hiku is paramount to producing strong conservation outcomes.

⁶ teoneroa-a-tohe.nz/beach-management-plan

⁷ policycommons.net/artifacts/12643454/korowai-for-enhanced-conservation/13541603

⁸ Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015, section 152. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0079/latest/DLM6577914.html

⁹ Te Hiku Iwi Social Development and Wellbeing Accord, 5 February 2013. govt.nz/assets/Documents/OTS/Te-Aupouri/Te-Hiku-iwi-Social-Development-and-Wellbeing-Accord-5-Feb-2013.pdf

¹⁰ The scope of a decision-making framework is set out in the following Acts:
Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015, Schedule 4, section 6, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0079/latest/DLM6578187.html;
Ngāti Kuri Claims Settlement Act 2015, Schedule 3, section 6, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0076/latest/DLM6058583.html;
Ngāi Takoto Claims Settlement Act 2015, Schedule 3, section 6, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0078/latest/DLM6578978.html; and
Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015, Schedule 3, section 6, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0077/latest/DLM6577041.html.

¹¹ Treaty settlement legislation is set out in the following Acts:
Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015, section 118, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0079/latest/DLM6577813.html;
Ngāti Kuri Claims Settlement Act 2015, section 104, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0076/latest/DLM6056264.html;
Ngāi Takoto Claims Settlement Act 2015, section 101, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0078/latest/DLM6578689.html; and
Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015, section 106, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0077/latest/DLM6576691.html.

¹² legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1987/65/en/latest/#DLM103610

2.4 Ngā mahere taiao nō ngā iwi me ngā hapū Iwi and hapū environmental management plans

Iwi and hapū environmental management plans are resource management plans prepared by an iwi authority, rūnanga or hapū.

These plans are an expression of rangatiratanga mana whenua and assist in exercising kaitiaki roles and responsibilities. They provide an opportunity for whānau, marae, hapū and iwi to clearly state how they intend to exercise their mana and also help to clearly identify issues regarding the use of natural and physical resources within their rohe.

In the context of Te Hiku CMS, there are currently four iwi and hapū environmental management plans:

- Te Iwi o Ngāitakoto Environmental Plan (2017)¹³
- Ahipara Takiwā Environment Management Plan (2019)¹⁴
- Ngā Tai e Rua o Te Aupōuri Environmental Management Plan (2018)¹⁵
- Ngāti Kuri Pou Taiao Environmental Management Plan (2018)¹⁶

These documents have been used to assist our understanding of the conservation and environmental issues in our rohe, and their specific policies have influenced our management approach at each Place.

While Ngāti Kuri chose not to be involved in this process, particular emphasis has been placed on the Ngāti Kuri Pou Taiao Environmental Management Plan (2018) at their request.

2.5 Horopaki a te ture Pāremata Statutory context

A CMS forms part of the statutory planning framework for all public conservation lands and waters in Aotearoa (Figure 2). Te Papa Atawhai administers and manages public conservation lands and waters in each region in accordance with this legislation and policy.

CMSs also guide Te Papa Atawhai when it is advocating for the protection of conservation values beyond public conservation lands and waters. At the top of the hierarchy is the Conservation Act 1987, beneath which lies the Conservation General Policy 2005,¹⁷ followed by CMSs and conservation management plans. Lower-level documents cannot be inconsistent with documents higher up in the hierarchy.

A conservation management plan contains the detailed objectives for a particular area when required by Treaty settlement(s) or where there are complex issues.

If the Places or regional policy requirements of Te Hiku CMS differ from, but are not inconsistent with, an operative conservation management plan, the conservation management plan is given precedence because it is the more specific planning document for that particular area.

¹³ ngaitakotoiwi.co.nz/publications/environmental-plan/te-iwi-o-ngaitakoto-environmental-plan

¹⁴ Te Rūnanga o Te Rarawa. 2019. Ahipara Takiwā Environment Management Plan. Ahipara: Te Rūnanga o Te Rarawa. terarawa.iwi.nz/files/pou-environmental/ahipara-takiwa/ahipara-takiwa-management-plan-december-2023-rev-2.pdf

¹⁵ Te Rūnanga Nui o Te Aupōuri. 2018. Ngā Tai e Rua o Te Aupōuri Environmental Management Plan. Te Kao: Te Rūnanga Nui o Te Aupōuri (copy available on request from Te Aupōuri).

¹⁶ Sanson S, Clarke-Nathan N. 2018. Pou Taiao Environmental Management 2018. Kaitiaki: Ngāti Kuri Trust Board. nrc.govt.nz/media/ehjdfj3f/ngati-kuri-environmental-management-plan-2018.pdf

¹⁷ doc.govt.nz/general-policy



Figure 2: Statutory framework managing conservation matters within *Te Korowai*

2.6 Te whakamana i ngā whānau me ngā hapū Enabling whānau and hapū

Under each Treaty Claims Settlement Act, the relationship is held between the Crown and the Post-Settlement Governance Entity (PSGE) in the statutory context. However, it is important to recognise that each iwi is wider than the PSGE. It comprises its rūnanga, marae, registered members and all those who whakapapa to that iwi. It has become clear through engagement that whānau and hapū want to take a leading role in conservation as kaitiaki.

Whether this role is in the form of joint projects, resource sharing, capacity and capability building, or simply restoring the environment, it is acknowledged that whānau and hapū have an important part to play in meeting our conservation goals.

Similarly, taitamariki have an important role, and partnering through education initiatives with schools, marae and landcare groups to support and lead conservation initiatives is critical to meeting our conservation goals and enabling our communities to thrive.

Whatungarongaro te tangata, toitū te whenua
As man disappears from sight, the land remains

3. Ngā kōrero tuku iho mō Te Hiku

Overview of Te Hiku

Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui has its origin in Māori mythology, being the tail of the fish caught by our ancestor Māui. It is the home of Ngāti Kuri and Te Aupōuri in the north and Ngāitakoto in the centre; the home of Te Rarawa is to the southwest, extending to Hokianga Harbour, with Ngāpuhi also having connections to the harbour and Maungataniwha, alongside Ngāti Kahu.

Māori habitation has strongly influenced the culture and history of Te Hiku – there are over 2,000 recorded archaeological sites, many of which contain evidence from the earliest periods of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) occupation in Aotearoa.

This area contains numerous pā that span many stages of fortification (pre- and post-musket), and features camps, terraces, gardening systems, urupā, wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga, wāhi waka, and middens. These sites are generally located on reserves, privately owned land, and Te Korowai lands and waters.

Te Hiku iwi have marae at many settlements throughout the region and strong cultural links to the whenua that Te Papa Atawhai manages. Many coastal areas contain resources that tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) choose to leave undisturbed.

Archaeologists have identified that some of these sites are at least 800 years old, including a site at Houhora that is 900 years old. The traditions and oral histories of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) span this timeframe and beyond, and this evidence represents the significant tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) interaction in Te Hiku.

Te Hiku is a biodiversity hotspot in Aotearoa and the world. The complex geological history, climate and oceanic currents here have shaped the

unique aquatic and terrestrial environments, habitats and species. The rare ecosystems and unique habitats in Te Hiku are home to high numbers of taonga and endemic species, including an incredible diversity of nationally threatened species. A list of the threatened and at-risk indigenous flora and fauna present is provided in Appendix 7 in Volume II.

Two of the most outstanding harbour and estuarine habitats in Aotearoa are present in Te Hiku: the drowned river valley of Pārengarenga Harbour and the shallow Rangaunu Harbour. The marine environments within these areas provide habitat for a number of species, and the marine area around Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands is one of the most diverse marine habitats in the world.

Kaimaumau-Motutangi wetland is the third-largest peat bog system in Aotearoa, and its bed of ancient kauri (*Agathis australis*) roots provides an important habitat for a variety of threatened ferns, mosses, orchids, birds and freshwater fishes, including waikaka/Northland mudfish (*Neochanna heleioides*). While the environment is unique, its attributes also increase potential risks, such as the threat of human-induced and natural fires.

The Warawara, Raetia and Herekino Forests contain examples of significant ecological areas, including remnants of mature kauri, broadleaf and podocarp forests. These areas provide significant habitat for many of the endemic and unique species but are subjected to various pest and biosecurity threats.

Many of the locations within this region have unique cultural values and associations with both tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the community. Rangitāhua/the Kermadec Islands and surrounding islands are currently managed as part of the Auckland Conservation Management Strategy¹⁸

¹⁸ doc.govt.nz/auckland-conservation-management-strategy

by Te Papa Atawhai. The importance of these islands in terms of cultural association is acknowledged, and it is noted that there is a process being undertaken at a central government level to reconsider how they might be managed in the future. Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) have expressed a desire for the management of these islands to be brought back into local management and managed under Te Hiku CMS.

Aotearoa is a signatory to many international agreements that are relevant to conservation. Te Papa Atawhai implements these agreements in accordance with its functions and has responsibilities for a number of species under those agreements. Some examples of international agreements of relevance within *Te Korowai* are the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity;
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES);
- International Convention for the Regulation of Whaling;
- Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species of Wild Animals;
- Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict; and
- Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property.

The Whakarua Moutere/North East Islands, which include Manawatāwhi, Te Paki Recreation Reserve and Otou North Cape Scientific Reserve within *Te Korowai*, are included on the Aotearoa tentative list for World Heritage status under the Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (World Heritage Convention). Additionally, Pārengarenga and Rangaunu Harbours have previously been proposed as Ramsar sites under the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat (Ramsar Convention).

3.1 Ngā hononga o ngā whakataunga Tiriti ki Te Hiku o Te Waka a Māui Interaction with Te Hiku CMS

The Treaty settlement redress for Te Hiku iwi includes a number of separate and distinct redress packages that interact with Te Hiku CMS, including Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Plan, Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i Te Taiao and the management of Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve.

These interactions required certain steps to be taken when formulating Te Hiku CMS. These steps have been undertaken and are considered in more depth in Appendix 15 ('The Korowai redress features') in Volume II, where the interactions are fleshed out, described and linked back to the relevant policies.

3.2 He whakamāramatanga Interpretation

The following information is provided for each Place in Volume I to assist decision-makers:

Objectives	Describe what Te Papa Atawhai wants to achieve across <i>Te Korowai</i> and also support national directions and community aspirations to achieve integrated conservation management and guide decision making.
Outcomes	Describe the future state of a Place, including its values, and reflect the expected changes at that Place over the term of Te Hiku CMS. They guide conservation management and decision making at a Place.
Policies	Provide detailed guidance on how an objective and/or outcome can be achieved. They describe the course of action or guiding principles to be used for conservation management and decision making.

Values	Are the specific attributes of a Place that Te Papa Atawhai wants to protect and enhance. They link to the outcomes to be achieved at a Place.
Issues	Are activities or actions undertaken at a Place that cause, or may cause, conflict with the values of the Place.
Opportunities	Are activities or actions that help, or may help, to enhance or protect the values of the Place.
Milestones	Are specific measurable steps towards achieving the objectives, outcomes and vision for <i>Te Korowai</i> . They enable Te Hiku Conservation Board to monitor and report on the implementation of Te Hiku CMS and are described in the past tense and written as if preceded by the words 'Te Papa Atawhai has'. Te Hiku CMS includes both Place-based (Part Two) and region-wide (Part Three) milestones, and there is no hierarchy between these.
Glossaries	Define words and phrases used within Te Hiku CMS are provided at the end of Volume I.

Note: All provisions (including milestones) in Parts One, Two and Three of this volume (Volume I) should be read in conjunction with each other because many of them are interconnected. Often, the provisions in Part Three address the issues and opportunities identified in Part Two. If there are differences between provisions in Parts Two and Three, the more specific provision in Part Two – Places applies (see Policy 3.2.1.4). Parts One, Two and Three ensure integrated conservation management across *Te Korowai* and nationally (see Figure 2). Legislative requirements, the Conservation General Policy 2005 and other requirements (such as regulations or bylaws) are not repeated in Te Hiku CMS.

3.2.1 Ngā whāinga o tēnei CMS CMS interpretation policies

User interpretation of Te Hiku CMS is directed by the following policies:

3.2.1.1 Give legal effect to the objectives, outcomes, policies and glossaries in Te Hiku CMS.

3.2.1.2 Apply the outcomes and policies for each Place in Part Two to all lands, waters and resources managed by Te Papa Atawhai in that Place.

3.2.1.3 Apply the national and regional objectives and policies in Part Three to all lands, waters and resources managed by Te Papa Atawhai in *Te Korowai*.

3.2.1.4 Give precedence to the Place-based outcomes and policies in Part Two where they differ from the national and regional objectives and policies in Part Three.

3.2.1.5 Interpret the words 'must', 'will', 'should' and 'may' where they are used in policies such that:

- 'must' reflects specific Treaty settlement provisions requiring a particular approach;
- 'will' is used where legislation provides no discretion for decision making or where a deliberate decision has been made by the Minister to direct decision-makers;
- 'should' is used where there is a strong expectation of the decision to be made by the decision-maker, and a departure from such a policy requires the decision-maker to be satisfied that exceptional circumstances exist; and
- 'may' is used where the intention is to allow flexibility in decision making.

- 3.2.1.6** Policies without ‘must’, ‘will’, ‘should’ or ‘may’ use other directive words that are to be applied in accordance with their common and everyday meaning and indicate a strongly recommended approach or action.
- 3.2.1.7** Give primacy and effect to approved conservation management plans until they are withdrawn or revoked, except where they clearly derogate from Te Hiku CMS.
- 3.2.1.8** Apply an integrated approach to management within Te Korowai and to cross-boundary management of Te Korowai lands and waters.

3.3 Ngā ture whakaritenga Bylaws and regulations

Bylaws can be established for reserves under the Reserves Act 1977¹⁹ or for national parks under the National Parks Act 1980,²⁰ and regulations can be made for conservation areas and other conservation purposes under the Conservation Act 1987. During the lifetime of Te Hiku CMS, Te Papa Atawhai intends to progress any bylaws or regulations that are required to support the policies and outcomes within it.

3.3.1 Ngā kaupapa here mo ngā ture whakaritenga Policies for bylaws and regulations

- 3.3.1.1** Consider establishing and reviewing regulations and bylaws where necessary to:
 - a) impose controls or restrictions as identified in Te Hiku CMS, such as for vehicle and watercraft use; and
 - b) enable better management of Te Korowai lands and waters.

¹⁹ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1977/0066/latest/DLM444305.html

²⁰ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1980/66/en/latest/#DLM36963



Tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel (*Anarhynchus obscurus aquilonius*).
Photo: Malcolm Pullman

4. He hononga ka tuia ki te Tiriti o Waitangi Treaty of Waitangi relationships

4.1 Ngā whakataunga Tiriti Treaty settlements

Te Hiku CMS acknowledges those iwi that have settled with the Crown and seeks to maintain and enhance these partnerships for enhanced conservation outcomes. This includes working together to achieve the requirements as set out in Treaty settlement legislation and, in particular, the ongoing obligations of being Treaty partners.

Te Hiku CMS acknowledges tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) with connections to *Te Korowai* that are yet to settle with the Crown. Under settlement legislation, there are ongoing avenues for Ngāti Kahu to play a critical role in conservation management once settled.

A summary of each iwi rohe is provided below:

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| Ngāti Kuri | The contemporary rohe lies north of a line between Tohoraha/Mount Camel and Hukatere, extending northwest to Motu o Pao (200m off Cape Maria van Diemen) across to Te Rerenga Wairua, and then east to Murimotu, and includes the islands of Manawatāwhi and Rangitāhua. |
| Te Aupōuri | The Te Aupōuri rohe extends from Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē/Ninety Mile Beach on the west coast to Maunga Tohoraha on the east coast, and from Ngāpae in the south to Te Rerenga Wairua in the north, and includes the Islands of Matāpia, Motu o Pao, Manawatāwhi, Rangitāhua, Murimotu, Te Rākauhakahaka/ Terakautuhaka and Motu Puruhi. |

Ngāi Takoto	The Ngāi Takoto rohe extends from the river of Whāro in the south to Te Rerenga Wairua, across to Rangitāhua and Manawatāwhi, and down to Rangaunu Harbour, then across the hill range and pā at Pungaungau, Wharekakariki, Tatarakihi and Pukekahikatea to Kerekere Pā, and returning across to Lake Tangonge to Whāro.
--------------------	--

Te Rarawa	The Te Rarawa rohe extends from Hokianga eastwards along the Hokianga River to Mangataipa, situated at the base of Maungataniwha, then across the Raetea Forest ranges, down the tributary river at Pamapurua to Mahimaru and across towards Awanui, then westwards to Hukatere on Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe and back down the coastline towards Hokianga.
------------------	---

Ngāti Kahu	Ngāti Kahu is the only remaining iwi within Te Hiku that is yet to settle its historical claims with the Crown. Te Hiku settlement legislation provides numerous avenues for Ngāti Kahu participation across several matters, including those associated with Te Hiku CMS in the future.
-------------------	--

Appendix 1 in Volume II provides details of the relevant Treaty settlement legislation, statutory acknowledgements, and iwi and hapū environmental management plans (where available online).

Given the Treaty settlements in *Te Korowai*, fresh thinking and new approaches are required to support Te Hiku CMS. Many of these are outlined in the *Korowai* for Enhanced Conservation Relationship Agreement.

Other potential approaches include:

- making changes at the Kaitia District Office level to move towards a ‘support, coach and mentor’ approach with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the community, with aspirations for these parties to carry out increased functions and roles in partnership with Te Papa Atawhai;
- developing teams that match the unique characteristics and qualities of each Place, and matching capabilities and resources to suit the needs of these Places;
- enabling tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to play a leading role in the active management of wāhi tapu on Te Korowai lands and waters;
- providing for ongoing opportunities (at request) for tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and Te Papa Atawhai to enable the outcomes specified in Te Hiku CMS to apply across both Te Korowai lands and waters and the lands returned through Treaty settlement to ensure integrated conservation management across these areas.

It is acknowledged by Te Papa Atawhai and Te Hiku iwi that the success of Te Hiku CMS is dependent on effective relationships and partnerships. This includes the commitment under the Korowai relationship principles from the Treaty Claims Settlement Acts:

- a) giving effect to the principles of te Tiriti o Waitangi/the Treaty of Waitangi:
- b) respecting the autonomy of each party and its individual mandate, role, and responsibility:
- c) actively working together using shared knowledge and expertise:
- d) co-operating in partnership in a spirit of good faith, integrity, honesty, transparency, and accountability:
- e) engaging early on issues of known interest to any of the parties:
- f) enabling and supporting the use of te reo Māori and tikanga Māori:
- g) acknowledging that the parties’ relationship is evolving:

...

Through the development of Te Hiku CMS, it has become clear that the capacity and capability of all parties require active support to achieve the shared aspirations, values and outcomes sought.

Treaty settlements have only been implemented with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) for a relatively short time, and there are increasing demands on tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to carry out their inherent kaitiaki obligations and embed cultural values into the system to do what is right for the environment.

There are expectations that tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) can solve these problems instantly, now that there are settled entities; however, the transfer of wealth, lands and co-management arrangements does not result in the instant reconciliation of generations of lost capacity and capability. We expect this to grow over time with partnerships and relationships that foster support, assistance and growth.

In recognition of this, Te Hiku CMS intends to direct Te Papa Atawhai, from a regional to local level, to balance the playing field by investing in genuine partnerships with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to enhance their capacity and capability to truly practise kaitiakitanga.

It is clear that tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the community in *Te Korowai* aspire to co-manage Te Korowai lands and waters in partnership with Te Papa Atawhai. The objectives and policies in section 4.2 are a starting point in providing for these aspirations.

4.2 Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here hei whakaū i ngā hononga mō te Tiriti o Waitangi

Objectives and policies to uphold and maintain Treaty of Waitangi relationships

4.2.1 OBJECTIVES	4.2.2 POLICIES
4.2.1.1 Treaty relationships with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) are: a) maintained and strengthened to enhance conservation; b) recognising the Treaty settlement partnership and kaitiakitanga; and c) based on Te Papa Atawhai responsibilities with respect to the Treaty principles, and the Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri, NgāiTakoto and Te Rarawa Deeds of Settlement and Treaty Claims Settlement Acts.	4.2.2.1 Must establish, maintain and strengthen positive, cooperative and enduring mutual relationships with Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri, NgāiTakoto and Te Rarawa, in accordance with the relationship principles of the Treaty Claims Settlement Acts. 4.2.2.2 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) through relationship agreements to identify, develop and review a mutual understanding of Te Tiriti o Waitangi principles and apply them: a) when making statutory decisions; b) during statutory management planning processes; c) through focusing on the operational delivery of conservation outcomes at each Place; and d) in meeting milestones within Te Hiku CMS. 4.2.2.3 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi)²¹ to develop ways to integrate tikanga, such as mātauranga Māori, manaakitanga, kaitiakitanga and Te Papa Atawhai knowledge, in the delivery of shared conservation goals, including by: a) recognising the long-term, evolving and mutually beneficial nature of Treaty partnerships; b) protecting tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) values, such as the Kaupapa Tuku Iho (see section 1.1, Part One), and enhancing access connections (where requested) to Te Korowai lands and waters; c) actively sharing decision making over conservation resources within <i>Te Korowai</i> in accordance with the Treaty settlement and conservation legislation; and d) better integrating Māori values and knowledge to support Te Papa Atawhai decision making across all conservation matters, including climate change.

Continued on next page

²¹ Where specifically implementing Treaty settlement commitments, Te Papa Atawhai is required to work with the PSGEs that legally administer those settlements on behalf of iwi.

4.2.1 OBJECTIVES	4.2.2 POLICIES
	4.2.2.4 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to identify opportunities and implement them, where agreed to by all relevant parties, in a way that is consistent with legislation and Te Papa Atawhai statutory functions to support: a) intergenerational wellbeing by enhancing or restricting access to and use of Te Korowai lands and waters and their taonga; b) enhancing the capability and capacity of all parties to engage in conservation management and leadership, including through education; c) conservation projects of strategic priority that enhance the natural, cultural and historic values of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), including: (i) mauri of the whenua, awa, moana and taonga species; (ii) resources; and (iii) the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species on Te Korowai lands and waters; and d) the active management of wāhi tapu (where requested) located on Te Korowai lands and waters. 4.2.2.5 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) on conservation issues, ensuring that engagement is early, ongoing, informed and effective and is in accordance with Te Hiku Treaty settlement legislation and the Korowai for Enhanced Conservation Relationship Agreement (and any amendments), including: a) during the development of statutory planning documents; b) on specific proposals involving Te Korowai lands and waters, taonga species, or resources of spiritual, historic or cultural significance; and c) when developing public information and interpretation that refer to sites or resources of significance. 4.2.2.6 Ensure that Te Papa Atawhai staff are aware of and implement their responsibilities under the Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri, Ngāi Takoto and Te Rarawa Deeds of Settlement and Treaty Claims Settlement Acts and any associated protocols and guidance documents, including the: a) Korowai for Enhanced Conservation Relationship Agreement (and any amendments); b) transfer of decision making set out in the 'Customary materials plan' (and any amendments), Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Plan for the Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē management area, Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i te Taiao for the Warawara Forest (Pt Northland Conservation Park), and relevant provisions for Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve; and c) decision-making framework and review functions, as specified in Treaty settlement legislation.

Continued on next page

4.2.1 OBJECTIVES	4.2.2 POLICIES
	4.2.2.7 Must work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), where relevant to their Treaty settlements, to: a) promote integrated conservation management for areas adjoining Te Korowai lands and waters that have been transferred through Treaty settlement or other means; b) promote integrated advocacy where Te Papa Atawhai has a common interest in resources located outside Te Korowai lands and waters; and c) establish, implement and review formal protocols or guidance documents, where relevant, to promote integrated management. 4.2.2.8 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) at their request to establish Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata and/or other conservation agreements to further protect values within <i>Te Korowai</i>. 4.2.2.9 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to: a) identify natural and cultural resources, sites and other taonga within <i>Te Korowai</i> with conservation values that are at risk of adverse impacts from the effects of climate change; and b) implement adaptation measures to improve the resilience of those values as part of the agreed opportunities between the relevant parties set out in Policy 4.2.2.4. 4.2.2.10 Consider relevant iwi and hapū environmental plans, biodiversity strategies and/or management plans at each Place in Te Papa Atawhai conservation management and operations and in the consideration of concession applications. 4.2.2.11 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to upskill Te Papa Atawhai staff and tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) on how to understand Kaupapa Tuku Iho and the guiding principles and values. Following upskilling work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), incorporate Kaupapa Tuku Iho into decision making. 4.2.2.12 Ensure that, in relation to Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē management area: a) there is particular regard given for the vision, objectives and desired outcomes identified in Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe Beach Management Plan relating to conservation issues by ensuring that any activity proposed within and adjacent to the management area on Te Korowai lands and waters includes an assessment of how the activity meets the vision, objectives and desired outcomes of Te Rautaki o Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē; and b) seek advice from Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Board regarding any activities, concessions or projects managed by Te Papa Atawhai, if appropriate.

Continued on next page

4.2.1 OBJECTIVES	4.2.2 POLICIES
	4.2.2.13 Must work to achieve consensus on decisions on any application for a concession within the Warawara Conservation Park and in accordance with Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i te Taiao. 4.2.2.14 Must, in relation to any activity proposed within the Warawara Conservation Park, ensure that an assessment is provided that considers: a) the purpose of Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i te Taiao; b) the processes within Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i te Taiao; and c) the decision-making and operating principles. 4.2.2.15 Must ensure that Te Hiku CMS is applied in addition to, and does not limit, the provisions of Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i te Taiao. 4.2.2.16 Must ensure that all decisions concerning the Warawara Conservation Park are made in accordance with Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i te Taiao and Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015.²² 4.2.2.17 Must ensure that all decisions concerning Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve are made in accordance with the relevant Treaty settlement legislation and Deeds of Settlement. 4.2.2.18 Must apply the ‘Decision-making framework’ and ‘Transfer of decision-making and review functions’²³ when making statutory decisions on authorisations relating to the ‘Customary materials plan’, ‘Wāhi tapu framework’ and ‘Protection of spiritual and cultural integrity of Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve’,²⁴ as set out in Treaty settlement legislation. Where elements of the decision-making framework have not been established, decision-makers should consider a reduced term for concessions and permits.

²² legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/79/en/latest/#DLM6577203

²³ Outlined in Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015, sections 119–121, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/79/en/latest/#DLM6577815; Ngāti Kuri Claims Settlement Act 2015, sections 105–107, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/76/en/latest/#DLM6056266; Ngāi Takoto Claims Settlement Act 2015, sections 102–104, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/78/en/latest/#DLM6578691; and Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015, sections 107–109, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/77/en/2015-09-22/#DLM6576693.

²⁴ Please note that Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve is referred to in Treaty settlement legislation as ‘Te Rerenga Reserve’ and is named as such in this document where directly referencing legislation wording. Refer to Appendix 15 in Volume II for a detailed description of the management of Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve and Volume III for relevant maps.



Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands. *Photo: Department of Conservation*



WAHANGA TUARUA

Ngā wāhi

PART TWO

Places

This section addresses Places that have been identified for the purpose of integrated conservation management and provides more specific management direction at each Place.

Part Two should be read alongside all other parts of Te Hiku CMS to understand the inter-relationship between national, regional and Place-based management. Where there are more specific provisions in this part, the Place-based provisions prevail.

The boundaries of these Places have been defined specifically for Te Hiku CMS (Figure 3). It is recognised that these Places overlap traditional tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) rohe, ecosystems and habitats, and species boundaries.

These Places recognise the important role the highlighted ecosystems play within Te Hiku. The diversity of ecosystem types includes smaller, extremely valuable and rare systems, which are recognised in the region's values and treasured by its people. The Places sections have been written to reflect a new approach to recognising ecosystems and to align with the tikanga of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū and iwi).

Each Place identifies the cultural, natural, historic and recreational values, issues and opportunities for each site within it and focuses on the ecosystem type it is named after – for example, Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki refers to the dunes in this Place, as well as the dunes throughout *Te Korowai*. The title indicates 'The dunes in this Place and all dunes elsewhere (in Te Hiku)'. This holistic approach identifies the values of the sand-based system, the opportunities we have to protect and enhance it, and the relevant issues.

Although a Place is named for one ecosystem type, other ecosystem types are also found there. When looking for a specific site, look in the Place where the site is located. If that site is also part of an ecosystem that another Place is named after, also go to that Place for direction on the ecosystem's values and policies on how the ecosystem is to be managed as a whole.

For example, Tauroa Point is located in Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki Place, The Forests, and is also a significant ancient coastal sand dune system.

So Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki Place covers the management of the area surrounding Tauroa Point, and Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki, The Dunes, policies cover the specific management of the Tauroa sand-based system.

There are four Places in *Te Korowai*:



**Ngā Moutere O,
Ngā Moutere Ki**
The Islands



**Ngā Onepū O,
Ngā Onepū Ki**
The Dunes



**Ngā Wai O,
Ngā Wai Ki**
The Waters



**Ngā Ngahere O,
Ngā Ngahere Ki**
The Forests

Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki

This Place is made up of many islands, including the Manawatāwhi archipelago, which lies approximately 50 km northwest of Te Rerenga Wairua and Motu o Pao near Cape Maria van Diemen; Murimotu (marginal strip only); and the Simmonds Islands, which consist of Te Rākautūhakahaka/ Terakautuhaka and Motu Puruhi. The islands in this Place provide habitat for terrestrial and aquatic indigenous flora and fauna and have important sites of Māori occupation that are of cultural significance.

Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki

This Place extends from Te Rerenga Wairua in the northwest and Otou/ North Cape in the northeast down towards Rarawa Beach in the south. It includes Pārengarenga Harbour, Te Tai-o-Rehua/ the Tasman Sea and Te Moana-nui-a-Kiwa/ the Pacific Ocean.

This Place contains many significant sites for tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), including culturally and spiritually significant aspects of Te Ara Wairua (the spirits' pathway), such as Te Rerenga Wairua. It is a well-visited destination for locals and tourists, and the impressive Te Paki sand dunes are located here. Policies related to dunes in this Place apply to dunes found in all other Places within *Te Korowai*.

Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki

This Place extends from Rarawa Beach in the north towards the Sweetwater dune lakes in the southwest and includes Rangaunu Harbour to the east. It includes significant areas such as Kaimaumu-Motutangi wetland, East Beach, Kuaka Point, and various lakes and wetlands of significance. Policies related to wetlands in this Place apply to wetlands found in all other Places within *Te Korowai*.

Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki

This Place extends from the boundaries of Ngā Wai in the north and east to the south towards Hokianga Harbour and east towards the Maungataniwha Forest. It contains four of the largest forests in *Te Korowai*, being Raetea, Herekino, Warawara and Maungataniwha. It also contains the large coastal landscape of Tauroa Point. Policies related to forests in this Place apply to forests in all other Places within *Te Korowai*.



Figure 3: Places in *Te Korowai*
(see Map 5 'Places overview' in Volume III)





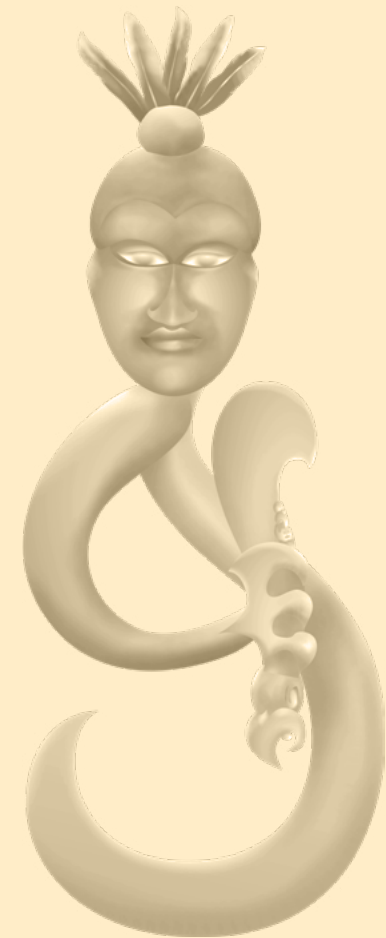
Motu o Pao. Photo: Department of Conservation

5. Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki The Islands

Ruia, ruia,
Opea, opea
Tahia, tahia,
Kia hemo te kākoakoa,
Kia herea mai i te kawau korokī.
Kia tātaki mai i roto i te pūkorokoro, whaikoro,
Te kūaka, he kūaka mārangaranga,
Tahi manu i tau ki te tāhuna, tau atu, tau atu, tau atu!

Scatter, scatter, sweep on, sweep on,
Let us not be plundered by our foe,
The rope has been stretched out and fastened, let us rejoice.
Moving along the rope,
The godwits have risen and flown,
One has landed, to the beach, the others follow!

Ngāti Kuri Pou Taiao Environmental Management Plan (2018)

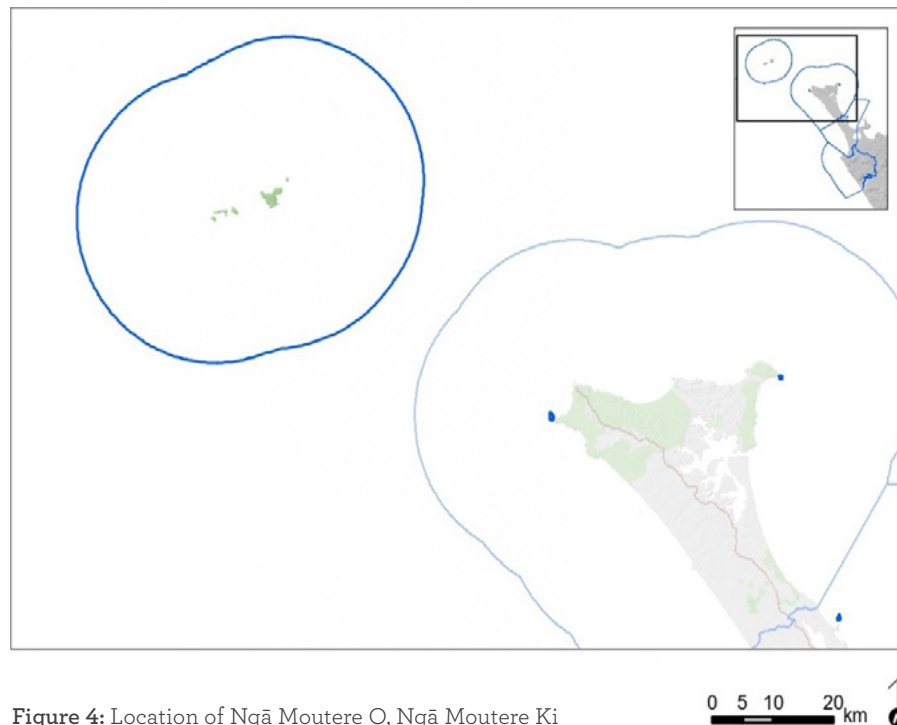


5.1 Ngā kōrero mō ngā moutere

Overview

Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki includes the Manawatāwhi archipelago and the surrounding coastal waters where Te Tai-o-Rehua and Te Moana-nui-a-Kiwa meet (Figure 4). It also includes Motu o Pao, Murimotu (marginal strip only) and the Simmonds Islands, which consist of Te Rākautūhakahaka/ Terakautuhaka and Motu Puruhi. Islands in *Te Korowai* that are over 1 ha in size and are administered by Te Papa Atawhai are listed in Appendix 4 in Volume II.

The rare ecosystems and habitats of this Place are home to high numbers of endemic species, including an incredible diversity of nationally threatened species. Many of these species require intervention to bring their populations back to healthy levels.



Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands

Manawatāwhi was named by Rauru, a chief of Ngāti Kuri, who swam to the island from Te Rerenga Wairua. Having arrived in an exhausted state, he called the island Manawa Tāwhi, meaning 'sigh of relief'. Manawatāwhi has ancient urupā, wāhi tapu, and evidence of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) occupation and settlement.

Before 1810, and again in the 1870s, whalers released goats (*Capra hircus*) and pigs (*Sus scrofa*) on Manawatāwhi as a source of food for passing ships. This had a profound effect on the plant life and habitats, with many plant species coming close to extinction. Manawatāwhi was declared a sanctuary under the Animals Protection and Game Act in 1930 and a nature reserve in 1956. Accordingly, recreational activities are only permitted in the waters that surround Manawatāwhi and not on the islands themselves.

Manawatāwhi has an area of 7 km² and lies approximately 56 km northwest of Te Rerenga Wairua. It has been separated from the mainland for at least 1.8 million years, and this isolation has resulted in low levels of sedimentation which, along with the varied and complex coastline, has resulted in the evolution of several species that are endemic to the bioregion surrounding the islands in the archipelago. Consequently, the archipelago is a marine biodiversity hotspot on a national and global scale, although little is still known about many of the species that live here and the true extent of the natural values that exist.

Manawatāwhi is internationally renowned for its extensive seabird breeding areas. The archipelago is home to the largest tākapu/ Australasian gannet (*Morus serrator*) colony in Aotearoa, and flocks of grey ternlets (*Anous albivittus*) numbering up to 200 birds each are commonly present over the summer and autumn months. Manawatāwhi also provides habitat for the endemic kōmako Manawatāwhi/Three Kings bellbird (*Anthornis melanura obscura*), which is important to the vision of *Te Korowai* – Tuia te korowai

ki te huruhuru o te kōmako/Let us weave the feathers of the kōmako into our korowai.

Additionally, 89 species (including currently undescribed species) of invertebrates that are known to be on Manawatāwhi are found nowhere else in the world. The archipelago is also home to many endemic species of plants, including kaikōmako Manawatāwhi (*Pennantia baylisiana*), which is the world's rarest tree in the wild, akapukaea (*Tecomanthe speciosa*) and elingamita (*Elingamita johnsonii*). The vegetation, although being dominated by the endemic Three Kings kānuka (*Kunzea triregensis*) and pōhutukawa (*Metrosideros excelsa*) over much of Manawatāwhi, has a feel of sub-tropical lushness to it because of the many unusually large-leaved plants that are also present. In addition to kaikōmako Manawatāwhi, akapukaea and elingamita, there are groves of Three Kings tītiki (*Alectryon excelsus* subsp. *grandis*), puka (*Meryta sinclairii*), Three Kings rangiora (*Brachyglottis arborescens*), tī kōuka/Three Kings cabbage tree (*Cordyline oblecta*) and large-seeded coprosma (*Coprosma macrocarpa* subsp. *macrocarpa*).

The territorial sea around Manawatāwhi is not covered by any of the provisions of the Resource Management Act 1991.²⁵ Consequently, the threats to this archipelago are often a result of human activities, including overfishing, fishing vessels in the surrounds and unauthorised landings. However, it is fires – both natural and those caused by human activity – and invasive marine species that are of the most concern given the large numbers of threatened, at-risk and/or endemic species located here.

A focus of this Place is to enhance the health of the environment and endemic species of Manawatāwhi by eliminating unauthorised access, reducing pest plant and animal and biosecurity threats, and minimising human interactions that can cause harm.

Motu o Pao

Motu o Pao is located 200m off the tip of Cape Maria van Diemen. This nature reserve is home to various wildlife, including:

- substantial breeding populations of kareta kapa mangu/black-winged petrel (*Pterodroma nigripennis*) and common diving petrel (*Pelecyanoides urinatrix*);
- species that were once common on the mainland, such as ōi/grey-faced petrel (*Pterodroma gouldi*), takahikare/white-faced storm petrel (*Pelagodroma marina*), tītī/sooty shearwater (*Ardenna grisea*) and pakahā/fluttering shearwater (*Puffinus gavia*);
- pūpū harakeke/flax snails (*Placostylus* spp.);
- three species of skinks, being Smith's ground skink (*Oligosoma smithi*), moko skink (*O. moko*) and Suter's skink (*O. suteri*); and
- Matapia gecko (*Dactylocnemis* "Matapia Island"), which has been recorded on the northern side of the island.

The construction of the lighthouse on the island in the 1880s was not in line with the cultural and customary use for the island; however, it now forms part of its heritage and culture. Management activities that are associated with the lighthouse occur from time to time to ensure that the structure is stable and watertight and it is not at risk of causing further environmental issues. The island is uninhabited, and the existing lighthouse is a relic of previous uses and activities when it was required for navigation.

The only visitors allowed on the island are Te Papa Atawhai staff, iwi and researchers carrying out management functions associated with plant and animal pest control, historic management activities, plant and marine work, and cultural activities. As a result of ongoing pest plant and animal eradication, Motu o Pao has no mice (*Mus musculus*), rats (*Rattus* spp.), stoats (*Mustela erminea*) or ants. This island is a strict 'no landing zone', which has assisted in this outcome.

²⁵ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1991/0069/latest/DLM230265.html

Murimotu

Murimotu is surrounded by a marginal strip that forms part of the Otou priority ecosystem unit and was created automatically on the transfer of the land to Ngāti Kuri and Te Aupōuri following their Treaty settlements.

Simmonds Islands

The Simmonds Islands are composed of Motu Puruhi and Te Rākautūhakahaka/ Terakautuhaka and are home to a variety of seabirds, shorebirds and passerine birds. Of note is the presence of breeding rako/ Buller's shearwaters (*Ardenna bulleri*), as this species was thought to only breed on the Poor Knights Islands until the discovery of this population in 1990.

Other native bird species that nest on the Simmonds Islands include tara/ white-fronted tern (*Sterna striata*), pakahā, kororā/ little blue penguin (*Eudyptula minor*) and ōi. Mataku moana/ reef heron (*Egretta sacra*), taranui/ Caspian tern (*Hydroprogne caspia*), karetai kapa mangu and kāruhiruhi/ pied shag (*Phalacrocorax varius*) have also been recorded on the islands.

The coastal forest is unusual in that it is dominated by tawāpou (*Planchonella costata*), with occasional pōhutukawa, māhoe (*Melicytus ramiflorus*), houpara (*Pseudopanax lessonii*) and karo (*Pittosporum crassifolium*). Unfortunately, there are also several exotic weed species present, the most notable of which is wandering willie (*Tradescantia fluminensis*).

The Simmonds Islands are home to Smith's ground skinks, which are present in quite large numbers. Giant land snails (*Placostylus ambagiosus keenorum*) were also released onto the islands by the Wildlife Service in 1984, but subsequent visits have failed to find any surviving here.

5.2 Ngā hua Outcomes

The following outcomes are sought for Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki:

- 5.2.1** The islands are valued for their spectacular and rare species and minimal human activities and interactions, and the structures that are used for necessary scientific purposes are promoted but limited for management and kaitiaki use.
- 5.2.2** Relationships between Te Papa Atawhai and tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) are restored and rebuilt, and collaboration and genuine partnership between the two are maintained and improved for the management of Manawatāwhi.
- 5.2.3** Extinctions of threatened and at-risk species have not occurred, and populations are safe and improving. The islands remain free of mammalian pests and weeds, and biosecurity threats are actively managed through management of access, proactive research and monitoring. Conservation programmes and projects enhance collaboration, and success stories are celebrated and shared.
- 5.2.4** Te Papa Atawhai works alongside tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to advocate for more appropriate fisheries management to be undertaken. Human-induced fires are reduced through active education and advocacy with the fishing industry, including recreational fishing charters and private fishing trips.
- 5.2.5** Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands Nature Reserve is not open to land-based recreational activities, and people understand the importance of limiting activity on those protected islands to protect their biodiversity.

- 5.2.6** Landings by watercraft and aircraft on Manawatāwhi remain very limited and are only permitted for associated management and research activities.
- 5.2.7** These protected islands are recognised for their cultural and spiritual significance associated with Te Ara Wairua.
- 5.2.8** Eliminating unauthorised landings on all the protected islands is being worked towards.
- 5.2.9** The diverse cultural and historic values of Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki are celebrated and protected, particularly from fire damage.
- 5.2.10** Research is actively being undertaken and supported so we have a better understanding of the islands' unique natural, cultural and historic characteristics and qualities.
- 5.2.11** The unique marine biodiversity values of this Place are better understood and are being protected.

5.3 Ngā uara, ngā take, ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here mō Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki

The Islands: values, issues, opportunities and policies

5.3.1 TE TIRITI O WAITANGI RELATIONSHIPS

Treaty settlement information (see Appendix 1, Volume II)	- Ngāti Kuri Claims Settlement Act 2015²⁶ - Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015²⁷
Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki	- Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) with Treaty settlements within Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki are: - Ngāti Kuri; and - Te Aupōuri. - The Ngāti Kuri Claims Settlement Act 2015 recognises Manawatāwhi and Motu o Pao as Statutory Acknowledgment Areas and returns Murimotu to Ngāti Kuri (tenants in common with Te Aupōuri) (see Appendix 1, Volume II). - The Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015 recognises Manawatāwhi and the Simmonds Islands as Statutory Acknowledgment Areas and returns Murimotu to Te Aupōuri (tenants in common with Ngāti Kuri) (see Appendix 1, Volume II).
Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) planning documents for this Place	- Ngāti Kuri Pou Taiao Environmental Management Plan (2018) - Ngā Tai e Rua o Te Aupōuri Environmental Management Plan (2018) (available on request from Te Aupōuri)
Values	- Manawatāwhi is of spiritual and cultural significance to all Māori, as the archipelago is the last point of land on Te Ara Wairua, laid down by Kupe. According to tradition, after diving into the sea at Te Rerenga Wairua, the spirits emerge at the westernmost island of Ōhau/West Island, where they take their last look back to Aotearoa before proceeding to their ancestral home in Hawaiki. - Manawatāwhi is the main island and known as an ancient island fortress and a significant offshore territorial marker. It is surrounded by a cluster of smaller islands, and on a calm, clear day, Ōhau, Moekawa/South West Island and Oromaki/North East Island are clearly visible from Te Rerenga Wairua. Up until the mid-1800s, these islands were occupied by Te Mahoe, who moved to and from Manawatāwhi sporadically until making a final move to the mainland, where they stayed at Taki Whetu for a short time before moving on to Takapaukura/Tom Bowling Bay.

Continued on next page

²⁶ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0076/latest/DLM6055877.html

²⁷ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0077/latest/DLM6576303.html

	• Motu o Pao is an ancient urupā and a site of significance. The placement of the lighthouse on this island for navigational purposes was, and still is, inconsistent with cultural values for the site; however, the lighthouse structure and associated areas now form part of its heritage values. • Ngā Moutere contains numerous taonga species of importance that have played, and continue to play, an important role in the identity and culture of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi). These include kaikōmako Manawatāwhi, pūtātara and elingamita on Manawatāwhi, and karetai kapa mangu, common diving petrel, ōi, takahikare, tītī and pakahā on Motuopao. On the Simmonds Islands, breeding rako, tara, pakahā, kororā, ōi, matakū moana, taranui, karetai kapa mangu and kāruhiruhi are present; the coastal forest here is unusual, being dominated by tawāpou, with the occasional māhoe, houpara and karo, while the shrubland near the coastal edges is made up of tī kōuka, coprosma, macrocarpa (<i>Hesperocyparis macrocarpa</i>), Three Kings hangehange (<i>Geniostoma ligustrifolium</i> var. <i>majus</i>), harakeke (<i>Phormium tenax</i>) and toetoe (<i>Austroderia splendens</i>). Some of these taonga species are listed in Appendix 14 in Volume II.
Issues	• Relationships between Te Papa Atawhai and tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) require restoration and improvement.
Opportunities	• Increase collaboration between Te Papa Atawhai, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the scientific community to better understand the biodiversity (marine and terrestrial) of Manawatāwhi.

5.3.2 NATURAL VALUES

Values	• Manawatāwhi, Te Rākautūhakahaka/Terakautuhaka, Motu Puruhi and Motu o Pao are all priority ecosystem units and existing nature reserves. • Manawatāwhi is home to 16 species of plants that are found nowhere else, including Three Kings tītoki, Three Kings rangiora, Three Kings sedge (<i>Carex elingamita</i>), elingamita, Three Kings kānuka, large-seeded coprosma, <i>Davallia tasmanii</i> subsp. <i>tasmanii</i>, Three Kings hangehange, puka, <i>Myrsine oliveri</i>, kaikōmako Manawatāwhi, <i>Piper excelsum</i> subsp. <i>delangei</i>, <i>Piper melchior</i>, <i>Pittosporum fairchildii</i>, <i>Streblus smithii</i> and akapukaea. Kaikōmako Manawatāwhi is internationally recognised as the world's rarest and most endangered tree. • The islands are home to a wide variety of sea and land bird species, including the northernmost population of Pacific albatross. Other seabirds include pakahā, ōi, tarāpunga/red-billed gull (<i>Chroicocephalus novaehollandiae scopulinus</i>) and toroa/Buller's mollymawk (<i>Thalassarche bulleri</i>), each of which is estimated to have tens of thousands of breeding pairs. • Manawatāwhi is a stronghold for tākapu, which also has breeding colonies on Moekawa. Karetai kapa mangu are also common on the islands, with an estimated 5,000 nesting pairs on Manawatāwhi (Great Island) and smaller numbers on Oromaki, Moekawa and Ōhau. Over the summer and autumn months, flocks of grey ternlets are commonly present on Manawatāwhi.
--------	--

Continued on next page

	• Six species of mokomoko/lizards call Manawatāwhi home, including Falla's skink (<i>Oligosoma fallai</i>) and Matapia gecko, both of which are endemic. Manawatāwhi (Great Island) has the largest number of mokomoko species (six species), followed by Oromaki and Moekawa (five species each), and then Ōhau (four species). • Manawatāwhi is a sanctuary for invertebrates. Giant centipedes (<i>Cormocephalus rubriceps</i>) grow up to 240 mm in length and are larger and more abundant on Manawatāwhi than on the mainland of Aotearoa. Additionally, 10 of the 38 species of land snails found on these islands are found nowhere else in the world, and the islands are also home to many endemic species of stick insects, ground beetles, wētā and spiders. • Native plants and animals on the mainland face a constant battle for survival against introduced pests, including mice, rats, stoats and ants, none of which are present on Manawatāwhi or Motu o Pao. • Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) have cultural associations with many of the taonga species found in Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki, particularly common diving petrel.
Issues	• Historically, wild animals and pests have destroyed habitats and species, resulting in a declining environment. • Some of the threats facing Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki are unauthorised landings, vessel visitation in the surrounding waters, potential pest plant and animal incursions, and fire risk. • Without regular management, regenerating native trees (pōhutukawa and kānuka) shade the sole kaikōmako Manawatāwhi tree, reducing vigour. Although the kaikōmako Manawatāwhi flowers each season, it does not produce any seed because there is no male plant. • Regular management of the canopy is also required to allow akapukaea to receive enough light. This species also flowers regularly, but no flowers survive to form fruit because kōmako Manawatāwhi and kākāriki feed on the large quantities of nectar they produce. • Due to the nature reserve status of the islands, all access other than by Te Papa Atawhai staff requires a permit, which restricts tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and their ability to exercise kaitiakitanga. • Marine and coastal ecosystems are threatened by habitat loss and degradation from pest plant invasion. • Despite its importance from a biodiversity perspective, limited research has been undertaken in Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki, especially in the marine environment. • Fishing (both recreational and commercial) is the most significant threat to coastal and offshore marine biodiversity. • There is currently a limited understanding of the likely risks and effects of climate change, which is expected to bring more extreme weather, changing weather patterns and ocean acidification. These effects will lead to the erosion, contamination and sedimentation of coastal habitats, resulting in changes in feeding zones and the loss of, or damage to, coastal ecosystems and important breeding habitats. • The territorial sea around Manawatāwhi is not covered by any of the provisions of the Resource Management Act 1991.

Continued on next page

Opportunities	• Work with and support tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to carry out projects and programmes that enhance flora and fauna. • Carry out and support more conservation research as it relates to Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki. • Use cultural and customary resources (via customary materials plans within Treaty settlement legislation); however, this will need to be managed alongside the precautionary approach that seeks to limit visitation and human interaction outside management functions. • In collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), intervene to support the kaikōmako Manawatāwhi tree. • Work collaboratively to gain better protection for the marine environment around Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki by exploring options and opportunities to expand the marine protected area network.
Policies	5.3.2.1 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to carry out conservation programmes and projects that enhance Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki. 5.3.2.2 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to carry out and support scientific research in Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki. This could include the potential effects of climate change, marine biodiversity or further research into locally endemic and threatened species. 5.3.2.3 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to advocate for marine protected areas in this Place. 5.3.2.4 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to educate the public, including people onboard vessels that visit the general area of Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki, about the potential effects associated with unauthorised landings and activities surrounding, and on, this Place. 5.3.2.5 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to minimise and work towards eliminating unauthorised landings on islands protected within the Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands Nature Reserve. 5.3.2.6 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to carry out environmental wānanga, workshops and projects to increase mātauranga and customary uses, protect taonga species, and increase the quality and quantity of flora and fauna.

Continued on next page

5.3.3 HISTORIC VALUES

Values	- Manawatāwhi, Motu o Pao, Murimotu and the Simmonds Islands have several sites of significance related to historical occupation and visitation by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi). - Protecting the sacredness of sites and objects of particular significance that have been dedicated, set aside or reserved for specific purposes (such as urupā) is an important cultural obligation for tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi). - Motu o Pao includes a historical lighthouse developed in the 19th century that now forms part of the heritage landscape of the island. Management activities are undertaken to support this relic.
Issues	- Climate change presents a specific set of challenges for Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki given the coastal location. Enhanced erosion, sea level rise and adverse weather-related events have the potential to affect the historic values and cultural heritage of the islands. - Unauthorised landings on Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki and visitation to the surrounding areas have the potential to affect and desecrate historic values. These landings increase fire risk and have adverse effects on historic values.
Opportunities	- Enhance storytelling and the sharing of information associated with Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki to outline the historic and heritage values of Te Korowai lands and waters that are near or in sight of the islands. - Formulate a Wāhi Tapu Framework and Wāhi Tapu Management Plan(s) to allow relevant iwi to actively manage and conserve these sites of significance, within the confines of the underlying reserve status.
Policies	5.3.3.1 In collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), protect and tell ngā kōrero toku iho of the special historic and culturally significant sites on Te Korowai lands and waters within Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki, particularly those that are not currently well known, to further protect and enhance historic values. 5.3.3.2 Work alongside tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) when undertaking management activities on Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki. Where possible, align management activities with any active management being undertaken or proposed under the Wāhi Tapu Framework or Wāhi Tapu Management Plan(s) by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi).

5.3.4 RECREATIONAL VALUES

Values	There are no recreational values requiring recognition because recreational visits to Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki will adversely affect natural, historic and cultural values.
Issues	Unauthorised visitors to this Place and its surroundings present biosecurity risks that may adversely affect natural values, as well as historic and cultural values.

Continued on next page

Policies

This Place has no recreational opportunities because it can only be visited for cultural activities by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in accordance with tikanga Māori and for Te Papa Atawhai management purposes in line with protecting the natural, historic and cultural values of the Place.

5.3.4.1 Permits should not be granted for non-research purposes to protect Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki and its cultural values, unique habitats and species, and to maintain these in an undeveloped, and essentially untouched, state.



Tākapu/Australasian gannets (*Morus serrator*) pair preening. Photo: TH Photos



Rarawa Beach. Photo: Alannah Lett

6. Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki The Dunes



He kuaka marangaranga,
kotahi te manu i tau atu ki te tahuna,
tau atu, tau atu, tau atu

Kuaka rise together,
one bird lands on the sand bank,
then another, then another

Ngāti Kuri Pou Taiao Environmental Management Plan (2018)

6.1 Tirohanga whanui

Overview

Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki extends from Te Rerenga Wairua in the northwest and Otou in the northeast down towards Rarawa Beach in the south, and includes Pārengarenga Harbour and a stretch of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē from Kahōkawa to Waipuna, parts of which are managed by Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe Board (Figure 5). Te Paki Recreation Reserve, Mokaikai Scenic Reserve and Paxton Point Conservation Area are also all in this Place.

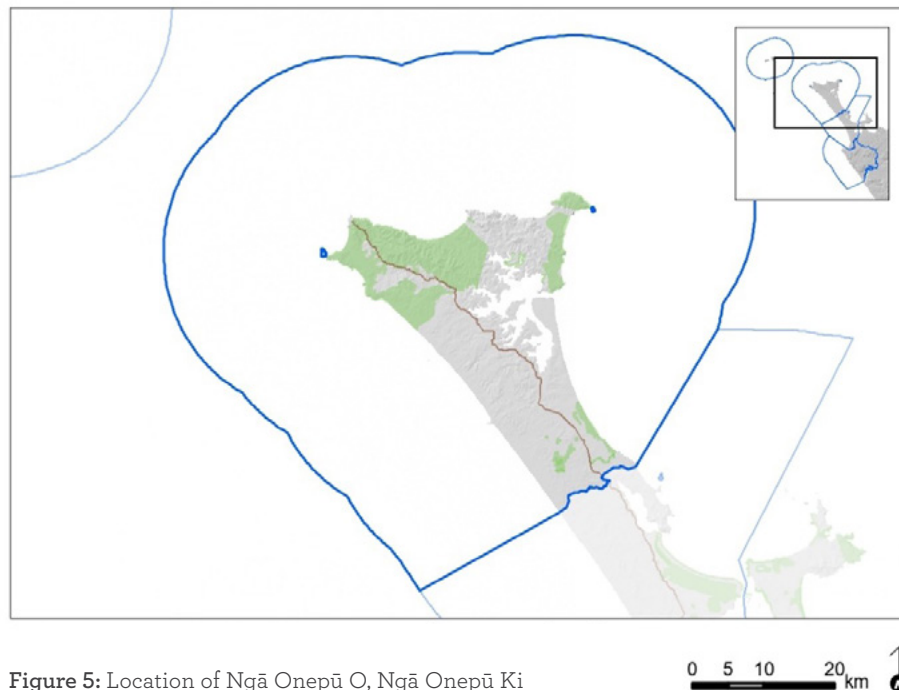


Figure 5: Location of Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki

Sand-based systems

The majority of Te Hiku is underpinned by sand. The impressive dunes around the coast of Te Hiku are the most visible element of the sand-based ecosystems here and capture the public's interest, drawing people from around the world. The sections of this Place with the heading 'Sand-based systems' include information and policies that apply to all sand-based systems across Te Hiku. These sections guide how the elements of the sand-based systems on Te Korowai lands and waters will be managed. They also identify the values of the system as a whole that need further support, protection or advocacy by Te Papa Atawhai.

The sand-based systems stretch from the beaches through active dunes and next to areas of duneland that were stabilised with pine trees. The foredunes are dominated by spinifex (*Spinifex sericeus*) and pīngao (*Ficinia spiralis*), while the backdunes include areas of mobile dunes. In some places, the mobile sand has been eroded by the wind and a wetland sand plain has formed.

The beaches are the breeding areas of tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel (*Anarhynchus obscurus aquilonius*) and tōrea pango/variable oystercatchers (*Haematopus unicolor*), and the strand line is now the only place where the small, Threatened – Nationally Critical Holloway's crystalwort (*Atriplex hollowayi*) is found. This herb is at serious risk of extinction, probably due to competition from weeds and disturbance by stock and vehicles.

Wetlands and dune lakes have formed in areas where water flow is blocked by sand or impeded by an iron pan. These are important for a number of threatened or at-risk plants, such as yellow bladderwort (*Utricularia australis*) and stout water milfoil (*Myriophyllum robustum*).

Lake Ngakeketa is a large dune lake in Te Paki Recreation Reserve, from which tuna heke of shortfin eel (*Anguilla australis*) and longfin eel (*A. dieffenbachii*) migrate downstream to Te Paki Stream and the sea.

Some wetlands and dune lakes discharge into streams, while others seep into aquifers that flow underground into the nearshore beaches.

Some of the best-known sand-based systems in Aotearoa are within this Place, including Te Paki and Pārengarenga Harbour – and the small bays and inlets around the coast are known for their high water quality due to the sand-based catchments at these sites.

There are also significant sand-based systems within other Places:

**Ngā Wai O,
Ngā Wai Ki**

- Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe from Wāipuna to Whāro (species within these systems can be found in Appendix 7, Volume II)
- coastal marine area, including the north side of Hokianga Harbour to Tuaroa Point (page 93, Volume I; species within these systems can be found in Appendix 7, Volume II)

**Ngā Ngahere O,
Ngā Ngahere Ki**

- The southern point of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē (species within these systems can be found in Appendix 7, Volume II)
- Te Akau Roa Te Tai Hauauru coastal marine area, including the north side of Hokianga Harbour to Tuaroa Point (pages 92 and 95, Volume I; species within these systems can be found in Appendix 7, Volume II)
- Ahipara gumlands (page 99, Volume I)
- Tuaroa Point dunes (pages 95 and 99, Volume I)

Additional features of Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki

In the northeast, where the dunes end, Hikurua/de Surville Cliffs provide a unique habitat that supports the highest concentration of locally endemic species in Aotearoa for its area.

Pārengarenga Harbour also has extensive areas of karepō/eelgrass (*Zostera muelleri*) and some marginal manawa/mangroves (*Avicennia marina*). In the summer, it supports high numbers of birds, including kuaka/eastern bar-tailed godwit (*Limosa lapponica baueri*) and huahou/lesser knot (*Calidris canutus rogersi*), and it has the highest diversity of international waders in Aotearoa. It is also an important breeding area for fish such as tāmure/snapper (*Chrysophrys auratus*), while green turtles (*Chelonia mydas*) use these waters as a transitional development ground.

The history of this Place is strongly influenced by habitation by Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri and Ngāi Takoto. Its significance is embedded within many stories, and the opportunity for telling these stories is vast. There is an incredible number of recorded archaeological sites that contain evidence from the earliest periods of human occupation in Aotearoa but, despite this, Te Ramanuka Conservation Area is the only actively managed historic site.

Te Rerenga Wairua, with its solitary pōhutukawa,²⁸ is a defining feature of this Place and a site of significance to Māori because, from here, the spirits of the dead travel on to Hawaiki.²⁹ The relationship that Te Hiku iwi have with Te Rerenga Wairua is acknowledged in Treaty settlement legislation, particularly the section titled ‘Protection of spiritual and cultural integrity of Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve’³⁰ in Ngāti Kuri, Ngāi Takoto and Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Acts, in which a specific decision-making process is set out for the reserve.

The trip along Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē to Te Rerenga Wairua brings the physical and spiritual realms of Aotearoa together at the tip of the country. Te Rerenga Wairua Lighthouse Walk within Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve³¹ is popular, and visitors are encouraged to stay on the track within the easement area.

²⁸ This pōhutukawa is on the peninsula within Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve.

²⁹ Spirits of the dead travel to Hawaiki through both Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve and Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve.

³⁰ Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015, section 121, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0079/latest/DLM6577817.html; Ngāti Kuri Claims Settlement Act 2015, section 107, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0076/latest/DLM6056268.html; Ngāi Takoto Claims Settlement Act 2015, section 104, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0078/latest/DLM6578693.html; and Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015, section 109, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0077/latest/DLM6576695.html.

³¹ Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve is owned and managed by the trustees of Te Manawa O Ngāti Kuri Trust, and any commercial activities must have their consent.

The sand dunes here are particularly popular destinations for visitors, and many tourism and guiding concessions are active here. The decision-making processes in this area must, therefore, consider biodiversity and recreational needs alongside the cultural and natural values of this Place.

The recreational facilities in the northern part of this Place also include Te Paki Coastal Track and the campsites at Tapotupotu Bay, Piwhane/Spirits Bay and Rarawa Beach. During the Christmas and summer periods, these campsites are busy because they are a favourite for locals and visitors to Te Hiku. Due to the cultural significance and fragile ecosystems, aircraft cannot land here, but some recreational overflights do occur, with take-offs and landings occurring on private land.

6.2 Ngā hua Outcomes

Sand-based systems

The following outcomes are sought for all sand-based systems within *Te Korowai*:

- 6.2.1** Sand-based catchments and coastal dunelands, including active dunes, backdunes and dune lakes, are actively managed for the protection and enhancement of these ecosystems.
- 6.2.2** The health of Houhora, Pārengarenga and Rangaunu Harbours and their catchments is being improved through the cooperative efforts of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), private landowners, communities, Te Papa Atawhai and other agencies.
- 6.2.3** Cordgrass (*Spartina anglica*) is being eradicated from the harbours in collaboration with Northland Regional Council.

Additional outcomes for Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki

The following outcomes are also sought for this Place.

- 6.2.4** Te Rerenga Wairua continues to be revered as part of Te Ara Wairua, the spiritual pathway to the ancestral Māori homeland, Hawaiki. Visitors appreciate the significance of the site to Māori and follow appropriate tikanga when visiting. Recreational opportunities and activities on Te Korowai lands and waters that are managed by Te Papa Atawhai and within the easement area in Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve do not diminish the cultural significance of this area.
- 6.2.5** The Place retains its remote, wild, windswept and dynamic characteristics. Visitors explore and experience, either independently or with a guide, the northernmost landscapes, ecosystems and spectacular beaches of Aotearoa while walking along the iconic, multi-day Te Paki Coastal Track and utilising the basic campsites at Paengarēhia/Twilight Beach and Whangākea/Pandora.
- 6.2.6** With their unique habitat, Hikurua at Otou continue to support the highest concentration of threatened and endemic species in Aotearoa, and Te Papa Atawhai, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders actively protect and manage these areas. These threatened species are secure in thriving ecosystems, especially where pest management is occurring.
- 6.2.7** The remaining reserves of eastern and western Te Paki, with their remnant forests, extensive secondary shrublands, regenerating forest, coastal dunelands and lagoons, and lush valley-floor wetlands, are actively managed for protection and enhancement.
- 6.2.8** The campsites at Tapotupotu Bay and Kapowairua remain as starting points for a network of tracks that provide opportunities to experience the isolation and sheer undeveloped beauty of this part of *Te Korowai*.

- 6.2.9** Visitors are giving back to nature, as well as actively enriching our communities and helping to protect and restore the cultural and historic values of Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place.
- 6.2.10** The priority ecosystem units are restored and improved through work on the dunes and relic coastal pōhutukawa forest throughout this Place. The clean dune lakes, lush wetlands and shrub-covered consolidated dunes of this Place are exemplified in the archaeological landscape and pā site at Te Ramanuka.
- 6.2.11** The natural landscapes continue to dominate the spectacular sweep of Tokerau/Great Exhibition Bay, from the gleaming silica sands of Kōkota/The Sandspit to Wharekāpu/Paxton Point and Rarawa Beach. The dunelands, wetlands and dune lakes are being restored and feature thriving populations of native plants and animals.
- 6.2.12** The numbers of wild animals, such as horses, dogs and cattle, that permeate Te Korowai lands and waters have been reduced through partnerships with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders. This enables ecological restoration of these habitats and results in a corresponding reduction in wild dog attacks.
- 6.2.13** More cultural and historic sites on Te Korowai lands and waters are being actively managed in this Place.



Pīngao (*Ficinia spiralis*), Rarawa Beach. Photo: Kylie McDowell

6.3 Ngā uara, ngā a take, ngā whaingā me ngā kaupapa here mō Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki

The Dunes: values, issues, opportunities and policies

6.3.1 TE TIRITI O WAITANGI RELATIONSHIPS

Treaty settlement information (see Appendix 1, Volume II)	• Ngāti Kuri Claims Settlement Act 2015 • Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015 • NgāiTakoto Claims Settlement Act 2015³²
Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki	• Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) with Treaty settlements within Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki are: – Ngāti Kuri; – Te Aupōuri; and – NgāiTakoto. • The Ngāti Kuri Claims Settlement Act 2015 vested Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve in Ngāti Kuri while continuing to provide managed public access to the lighthouse by way of an easement. The Te Aupōuri, NgāiTakoto and Ngāti Kuri Claims Settlement Acts provide for Te Aupōuri, NgāiTakoto, Ngāti Kuri and Te Papa Atawhai to have equal roles in decision making over Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve in matters outlined in that legislation. This includes providing the opportunity to create a conservation management plan for Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve. • The Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015 recognises Paxton Point Conservation Area (including Rarawa Beach Campsite, Kohuronaki Pā and North Cape Scientific Reserve) as a Statutory Acknowledgement Area (see Appendix 1, Volume II). • The NgāiTakoto Claims Settlement Act 2015 recognises Rarawa Beach Campsite as a Statutory Acknowledgement Area (see Appendix 1, Volume II).
Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) planning documents for this Place	• Ngāti Kuri Pou Taiao Environmental Management Plan (2018) • Te Iwi o NgāiTakoto Environmental Plan (2017) • Ngā Tai e Rua o Te Aupōuri Environmental Management Plan (2018)

Continued on next page

³² legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/78/en/latest/#DLM6578301

Values

- The significance of Te Rerenga Wairua is embedded in Māoridom. Te Ara Wairua forms part of the spiritual journey that leads north along Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē on the west coast of the North Island to Te Rerenga Wairua, and it is acknowledged that this spiritual pathway is a link to the ancestral homeland, Hawaiki.
- The relationship that Te Hiku iwi have with Te Rerenga Wairua is acknowledged in Treaty settlement legislation, particularly in the section titled 'Protection of spiritual and cultural integrity of Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve' in each Treaty Claims Settlement Act.
- The importance of Otou/North Cape Scientific Reserve stems from Māori traditional relationships, cultural practices, spiritual associations and significant historical events. Maintaining these associations is important in upholding Māori identity, connecting past and present generations, linking the people and the whenua together, and acknowledging inter-tribal relationships. The hills within the reserve are used as markers to assist in locating hāpuka/groper (*Polyprion oxygeneios*) fisheries. In the past, some of the hilltops also served as lookout posts for locating pakake/whales, which migrated along the east coast of the peninsula.
- The Otou/North Cape Scientific Reserve is an area steeped in layers of history. From here, Māori can trace links back to both their early Polynesian ancestors and the start of a radical change of life that developed from their first contact with European people, customs, language and technology.
- As tradition tells, the first pā was in Mahurangi, which was populated by those who migrated to Aotearoa on the *Kurahaupō* waka. The area the pā was located in had its own special microclimate, source of fresh water, fishing grounds, food gardens and urupā. Like all pā and kāinga noho, Mahurangi afforded a safe haven; a place where the people could work to ensure that preparations for seasonal changes were well in hand and that there were abundant supplies to see them through to the next harvesting season.
- Wharekāpu (also known as Wharekāpua) features prominently in history. The association to this area began when Ruatamore landed his waka, *Taikōria*, near Wharekāpu on the southern end of Tokerau Beach at a location called Waitaha. According to history, Ruatamore Pā was strategically hidden and constructed so that, while inside it, one could only view the clouds above, hence the name Wharekāpu. The remnants of the pā remain to this day and, together with the surrounding lands, are a strategic kāinga of Ngāti Kāha, the descendants from the *Kurahaupō* waka.
- Rarawa and Wharekāpu are also the names of the two hills located at either end of Rarawa Beach. Rarawa is at the southern end above Ngataki Stream, and Wharekāpu is at the northern end between Rarawa Beach and Tokerau. A well-known whakataukī that refers to these hills is, 'to ke Rarawa, to ke Wharekāpu' ('Rarawa stands alone and Wharekāpu stands alone'). This refers to the fact that the two hills will always be apart, and this expression is sometimes used to describe two people who will always be opposed to one another.

Continued on next page

	• Rarawa and Wharekāpu were significant kāinga and continue to be used seasonally to this day. These areas are valued for gathering seafood, with access to rocks and associated shellfish species such as kina (<i>Evechinus chloroticus</i>), koura/ crayfish (<i>Jasus edwardsii</i>) and pāua (<i>Haliotis</i> spp.) on the central peninsula. Depending on the weather, tide, wind, moon or season, people traditionally moved between the west coast, the east coast and the harbours in search of food and other resources. • Wharekāpu is the coastal extreme of what was a larger traditional settlement that stretched inland along the banks of the Taoha Stream to the cultivations of Waimarama and the inland pā of Te Tomo a Tāwhana. • This Place contains part of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē, which is an area of cultural significance for tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi). • The relationship between Te Aupōuri and kuaka is older than their relationship with Aotearoa itself. The whakataukī ‘he kahui waka ki te moana, he kahui atua ki te rangi’ (‘a fleet of waka on the ocean, a spiritual fleet in the sky’) acknowledges the sound of the spring flocks of kuaka migrating to Aotearoa that helped lead the waka here.
Policies	6.3.1.1 Have regard to any management plan for Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve when managing Te Paki Recreation Reserve and other Te Korowai lands and waters to ensure integrated management. 6.3.1.2 Manage Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve, as shown on Map 5.2 in Volume III, to protect the spiritual and cultural integrity of the area, with certain important decisions to be made jointly by Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri, NgāiTakoto and the Crown, taking into account the views of the other kaitiaki iwi of Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui and in accordance with any management plan for this area. 6.3.1.3 Manage the car park providing access to Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve and Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve (shown on Map 8.2 in Volume III) in a manner that integrates with the management of these reserves.
6.3.2 NATURAL VALUES	
Values	Sand-based systems • The marine habitats and sand-based ecosystems – including Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē, Te Paki West and East and adjoining bays, and Pārengarenga, Houhora and Rangaunu Harbours – are diverse and important (see Appendix 8, Volume II). • The foredunes are dominated by spinifex and pīngao, while the backdunes include areas of mobile dune and sand coprosma (<i>Coprosma acerosa</i>), autetaranga (<i>Pimelea villosa</i>), wiwi/knobby club rush (<i>Ficinia nodosa</i>), toetoe and rawiri mānuka (<i>Kunzea linearis</i>) amongst exposed hard iron pan ridges. • The wetland sand plains support other specialised plants, such as sand spike sedge (<i>Eleocharis neozelandica</i>) and oioi (<i>Apodasmia similis</i>).

Continued on next page

- The beaches are the breeding areas of tūturiwhatu and tōrea pango, and the strand line is now the only place where the small, Threatened – Nationally Critical Holloway’s crystalwort is found. This herb is at risk of extinction, probably due to competition from weeds and disturbance by stock and vehicles.
- Wetlands and dune lakes are important for a number of threatened or at-risk plants, such as yellow bladderwort and stout water milfoil.

Additional values for Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki

- There are about 16 broadleaf podocarp forest remnants remaining across Te Paki; however, the Kohuronaki, Radar and Unuwahao remnants are the largest and most diverse. Radar Bush is the only place north of Kaitaia where kauri occurs in any number. The extremely diverse canopy of this remnant site also includes rātā Moehau/Bartlett’s rātā (*Metrosideros bartlettii*), northern rātā (*Metrosideros robusta*), southern rātā (*Metrosideros umbellata*), pōhutukawa, taraire (*Beilschmiedia tarairi*), tawa (*Beilschmiedia tawa*), kohekohe (*Didymocheton spectabilis*), pūriri (*Vitex lucens*), rimu (*Dacrydium cupressinum*), kahikatea (*Dacrycarpus dacrydioides*), mataī (*Prumnopitys taxifolia*), miro (*Pectinopitys ferruginea*), tōtara (*Podocarpus totara* var. *totara*), Hall’s tōtara (*Podocarpus laetus*), kaiwaka (*Libocedrus plumosa*), manao (*Manaoa colensoi*), Kirk’s pine (*Halocarpus kirkii*) and tanekaha (*Phyllocladus trichomanoides*). To protect this site, 150 ha have been fenced against pigs.
- Foley’s Bush is a Queen Elizabeth II National Trust (QEII) covenanted forest on the Awanui floodplain, north of Kaitaia. It is the only remaining stand of lowland alluvial forest in the area and contains large kahikatea and riparian species. It is also home to dwarf mazus (*Mazus novaezeelandiae* subsp. *impolitus* f. *hirtus*), a Threatened – Nationally Critical herb, and *Bulbophyllum tuberculatum*, a small epiphytic orchid that is At Risk – Naturally Uncommon.
- The southern part of this Place is a tombolo connecting the basalt (and other rocks of Te Paki) to the mainland. Ocean currents drive sand along the peninsula and have built up the tombolo. In the past (c. 6,500 years ago), Te Paki and Tohoraha were islands, which is partly why they have such high diversity.
- There are numerous priority management units within this Place, such as eastern and western Te Paki, Otou, Te Ramanuka, Kōkota, Hikurua and Tokerau. These areas have been chosen based on the ecosystem types present, such as gumlands, ultramafic sea cliffs, warm forests, shrublands and wetlands, and/or the endemic species present.
- Threatened and at-risk fauna are present at multiple scattered localities in this Place. These species include the pūpū harakeke *Placostylus ambagiosus*, various skinks and geckos, and seabirds such as kuaka and kōtuku/white heron (*Ardea alba*) among others.
- There are numerous significant geological features within this Place, such as Kōkota, Te Paki sand dunes and the Tangihua Complex serpentinised ultramafic formation at Hikurua (see Appendix 9, Volume II). These features provide a glimpse of the various processes that formed this Place and supported the various endemic species found here. There are also numerous outstanding natural landscapes that engulf this Place, from Te Paki sand dunes through to Te Rerenga Wairua, around to Otou and back to Rarawa Beach.

- Hikurua is a 1.2 km² block of upthrust, ultramafic, serpentinised substrate. It is home to 19 threatened or at-risk plants, including kōhūhū tangihua (*Pittosporum serpentinum*), *Sabdariffa* aff. *diversifolia* (Survile) and *Rhabdothamnus* aff. *solandri* (a) (Survile Cliffs), which are all Threatened – Nationally Critical; Survile Cliffs jasmine (*Parsonsia praeruptis*) and *Pittosporum pimeleoides* subsp. *majus*, which are both Threatened – Nationally Endangered; *Coprosma* aff. *macrocarpa* (Survile) and Survile Cliffs rengarenga (*Arthropodium* aff. *cirratum* (Survile Cliffs)), which are both At Risk – Declining; and a further 12 plants that are At Risk – Naturally Uncommon. *Placostylus ambagiosus* (Threatened – Nationally Critical) and *Oligosoma* aff. *smithii* (At Risk – Declining) are also present, and other as yet unrecognised species may also be endemic to this site.
- Seabirds such as kuaka visit every year to exploit the rich feeding grounds and avoid the frozen lands of the Arctic. Pārengarenga Harbour supports kuaka and many other seabirds during their travels, and the coastal areas in this Place provide respite and refuge on their travels.
- Strandings of marine mammals, including pakake and dolphins, happen infrequently at this Place. But when strandings do occur, they cause harm and grief to tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and local communities. There is a strong process for managing marine mammal strandings between Te Papa Atawhai, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders.
- The stretch of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē from Kahōkawa to Wāipuna is often accessed from Te Paki Recreation Reserve via Te Paki Road and Stream. Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē and its interface with Te Korowai lands and waters promotes the potential for a unique approach to management that considers both land- and beach-based issues.

Issues

Sand-based systems

- Sand-based ecosystems face numerous threats: the dune ecosystems are threatened by habitat loss and degradation from grazing, trampling by stock and wild animals, vehicles, pest plant invasion, and predation; the estuary and harbour ecosystems are threatened by activities within their catchments, such as land-use change, which can result in higher nutrient levels and sedimentation. Recreational use of the tracks can also lead to habitat loss and fragmentation, wildlife disturbance, increased pest plant encroachment, increased predation including from dogs and cats, and disruption of wildlife movement. This can have knock-on effects for marine water quality and species.
- Various migratory seabirds visit this Place but, as in other countries, high-quality habitat is often at risk from human interaction and, more recently, climate change, because rising sea levels will greatly reduce intertidal foraging habitat throughout the breeding cycle.

Continued on next page

Additional issues for Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki

- Weed control and biosecurity threats remain a significant issue because the priority ecosystem units and reserves within this Place are unique but varied and cover a large geographical area, making management difficult. Therefore, collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders is critical to assist in these areas.
- Fires, both natural and human induced, are a serious threat to the distinctive endemic biodiversity of this Place; however, fire (at the right scale) is important for maintaining the early succession shrubland habitats and species associated with gumlands.
- Fishing, both recreational and commercial, is the most significant threat to coastal and offshore marine biodiversity.
- The significance of this area as a recreational hub for visitors and tourists can have adverse effects on natural values.
- Wild dogs and other wild animals, such as horses and cattle, are present in this area and often cause closures of the tracks and other recreational opportunities throughout this Place. They also affect the flora and fauna through predation, grazing, and the spread of pest plants and animals.

Opportunities

Sand-based systems

- Realise opportunities for education and community awareness about freshwater, land conservation and coastal water management issues provided by the varied land- and seascapes of the dunes, their lakes, related wetlands and sandy bays. Te Papa Atawhai, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders are committed to improving their understanding of the varied flora and fauna to enable these species to thrive.
- Minimise disturbance to many migratory birds at high-tide roost sites by working with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders.

Additional opportunities for Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki

- Enable tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to use cultural and customary resources in this Place through customary materials plans within Treaty settlement legislation.
- Support research-led projects being undertaken by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to better understand the conservation issues and opportunities.
- Enhance landscape-wide predator and pest control programmes that permeate across Te Korowai lands and waters and the lands returned through Treaty settlement.
- Work with landowners and across agencies to better manage and significantly reduce the populations of wild animals, such as dogs, horses and cattle.
- Build on the enhanced connections with natural areas and employment opportunities that Jobs for Nature has already created to generate more conservation work and enhance wellbeing.
- Enhance the integrated management at the interface of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē and Te Paki Recreation Reserve between Te Papa Atawhai, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Board.

Continued on next page

Policies	Sand-based systems 6.3.2.1 In partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), work with conservation stakeholders, Northland Fish & Game Council, Northland Regional Council and Far North District Council to advocate for responsible land-based rural activities that do not detrimentally affect the natural environments and ecosystems of sand-based ecosystems, estuaries and harbours. 6.3.2.2 In partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), work with conservation stakeholders to improve our understanding of the varied flora and fauna in sand-based systems, and educate landowners and the wider community on the importance of managing these sites for species protection. 6.3.2.3 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to increase the protection and enhancement of coastal and inland dune habitats, estuaries and harbours from the adverse effects of development, the spread of pest plants and animals, vehicle use, and stock incursions by: a) actively managing Te Korowai lands and waters; b) supporting the work of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders; and c) raising public awareness of the vulnerability of these habitats. Additional policies for Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki 6.3.2.4 Control the numbers of weed and pest species, including sea spurge (<i>Euphorbia paralias</i>), pigs, wild dogs and cats, mustelids (stoats, weasels [<i>M. nivalis</i>] and ferrets [<i>M. putorius furo</i>]), horses, cattle, possums (<i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>) and rodents, in collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to levels that allow native species and habitats within Te Paki Recreation Reserve, Mokaikai Scenic Reserve and Otou/North Cape Scientific Reserve to recover. 6.3.2.5 Advocate for responsible land-based rural activities that do not detrimentally affect the natural environments and ecosystems of Pārengarenga Harbour in collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), conservation stakeholders, Northland Fish & Game Council, Northland Regional Council and Far North District Council. 6.3.2.6 Protect the natural and historic conservation values and recreational facilities by maintaining fire risk reduction measures in Te Paki Recreation Reserve. 6.3.2.7 Work alongside the local kāinga of Te Hāpua, Te Kao and Ngataki to align Te Papa Atawhai priorities with community conservation needs and priorities where practicable, and to ensure that there is active involvement of the community in the management of Te Rerenga Wairua.
----------	--

Continued on next page

-
- 6.3.2.8** Implement a high level of mainland biosecurity and strongly advocate for the adoption of biosecurity measures to protect the priority ecosystems and threatened species of this Place.
- 6.3.2.9** Manage the track systems and Rarawa Beach and Kapowairua standard campsites to enhance opportunities for visitors to appreciate the outstanding beauty and unique biodiversity of this Place. Management complements the wide array of natural values and promotes enhanced biosecurity measures in the area.
- 6.3.2.10** Work with local authorities, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to protect migratory native species, in particular kuaka. This includes advocating for natural quiet around breeding sites, such as Kōkota, during breeding seasons.
- 6.3.2.11** Undertake activities associated with stranded marine mammals, in accordance with Te Hiku iwi marine mammal protocols.
- 6.3.2.12** Work with local authorities, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to identify ways in which the water quality in the coastal environment can be improved by changing land management practices, giving particular attention to the:
- a) nutrient, sediment and contaminant runoff from farmland, forestry and industry;
 - b) animal effluent from stock access to coastal waterways; and
 - c) seepage from septic tanks in coastal townships into coastal waterways.
- 6.3.2.13** Apply the following principles to the restoration of indigenous biodiversity:
- a) The restoration of indigenous biodiversity is about restoring the relationship between tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and important sites and resources, including planning for customary use.
 - b) The interests and relationship of Māori with indigenous biodiversity and mahinga kai are recognised and provided for in pest management strategies by ensuring that tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) are involved in setting priorities and designing operations.
 - c) The restoration of indigenous biodiversity is about re-establishing original and natural landscapes.
 - d) Mahinga kai objectives are incorporated, where appropriate, into restoration project planning and objectives.
 - e) Natural succession and staged replanting are used for restoration projects, rather than spraying and burning.
 - f) Seeds and plants that are appropriate to the area and locally sourced are used as much as possible for restoration projects.
-

Continued on next page

6.3.2.14 Support and work with the groups, landowners and agencies that are working to protect, maintain, restore and enhance the indigenous biodiversity of this Place and are advocating for projects of interest and importance.

6.3.2.15 Advocate for the ongoing protection and preservation of all wetlands, puna and riparian areas in *Te Korowai* that provide important cultural and environmental benefits.

6.3.3 HISTORIC VALUES

Values	- Several sites of significance are found on Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place due to the successive and ongoing occupation of land by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi). This includes sites of significance that are mapped under the district and regional plans and registered archaeological sites that are mapped by Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga. Many sites are unlikely to be mapped to ensure the security of the knowledge of these sacred locations. The oral histories of some of these sites, if sought to be shared, can further enhance the character and experience of this Place. - Following Treaty settlement, several sites of historic and cultural significance have been returned to tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi). These landholdings are often adjacent to, or were once part of, Te Korowai lands and waters. There is a strong connection to the lands and waters, despite the management boundaries overlapping. - Evidence of Māori occupation in the pre-historic and pre-European periods includes archaeological remains located and recorded by archaeologists and registered with the New Zealand Archaeological Association.
Issues	- Outside the iconic and nationally important heritage areas, Te Papa Atawhai knows little about the sites of significance to Māori and where they exist on Te Korowai lands and waters. - With the return of lands following Treaty settlement, there are now issues with the ability of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to gain access to culturally significant sites on Te Korowai lands and waters.
Opportunities	Further assess and verify knowledge of the historic and cultural heritage on Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place to tell the historic stories to the wider community and visitors.
Policies	6.3.3.1 Identify sites of cultural and historic importance on Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place by working with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), conservation stakeholders and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga. 6.3.3.2 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to provide access to historic and culturally significant sites on Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place. 6.3.3.3 Support tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to develop wāhi tapu management plan(s) and promote the active management of wāhi tapu in this Place (where requested).

Continued on next page

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| 6.3.3.4 | Improve the provision of information and interpretation materials relating to the historic and cultural heritage of this Place in partnership with relevant tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi). |
| 6.3.3.5 | Manage wāhi tapu sites and sites of cultural significance on Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place in accordance with wāhi tapu plans (unless in emergency situations). |

6.3.4 RECREATIONAL VALUES

Values

- This Place provides numerous recreational opportunities for most ages and fitness levels, and for both domestic and international visitors.
- As one of the most iconic destinations in Aotearoa, Te Rerenga Wairua provides the backbone to the visitor experience in *Te Korowai* and is a significant destination for both domestic and international tourists.
- Other recreational opportunities include shorter walks, such as Te Rerenga Wairua Lighthouse Walk, Kapowairua to Pandora track, Pandora to Tapotupotu track, Rarawa Beach Track, Twilight/Te Werahi Loop Track and Te Paki Coastal Track. By joining walks together, longer walks can be enjoyed, such as from Kapowairua to Tapotupotu.
- These opportunities allow visitors to see spectacular environments, including diverse land and seascapes, and to venture close to indigenous species and environments.
- Established, long-standing vehicle access is afforded between the end of Te Paki Stream Road and Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē via the bed of Te Paki Stream. The stream is the northernmost public access point to the beach and sees a high volume of traffic from a variety of users, ranging from cyclists on Tour Aotearoa to tour buses. Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Plan sets out the desired outcomes and objectives for the management of the beach, including the management of the area for recreational purposes.
- Many visitors experience Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē through this Place, visiting Te Paki sand dunes before heading via bus to their final destination. While there are many other access points, this Place provides numerous recreational opportunities along Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē.
- This Place provides numerous camping and public facilities, including those at Rarawa Beach, Kapowairua, Pandora and Tapotupotu. There are also basic facilities provided between Te Werahi Beach and Paengarēhia.

Continued on next page

Issues	• Visitors, including their vehicles and dogs, can damage sensitive dune vegetation, accelerate erosion, expose areas to pest plant invasion, and disturb and affect the breeding success of vulnerable shorebird species, especially at important breeding, feeding and wintering sites. Therefore, vehicle access may need to be phased out in certain locations. • There are concerns about the use of vehicles in Te Paki Road Recreation Reserve through to Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē. While vehicles are not banned from the beach, their effects on the beach are of concern to Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Board. The interface between Te Korowai lands and waters and access to these areas requires specific consideration. • If at any point in the future the managing bodies of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē close vehicle access along Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē, either temporarily or permanently, vehicle access along Te Paki Stream will need to be adjusted accordingly. Otherwise, Te Paki Stream would become a dead end and the dune system could become an unintended car park. • While visitor use of existing tracks, walks and camping facilities is encouraged, this needs to be managed in balance with the important cultural, spiritual and natural values that underpin the various sites within this Place. • Some of the tracks, walks and campsites in this Place are part of important cultural, spiritual and natural sites on Te Korowai lands and waters. The seasonal influx of visitors can put pressure on these sites and affect their intrinsic values. Visitors to these sites also pose a fire risk due to discarded cigarettes, plastic, glass, open campfires and vehicle exhaust. • The campsites along Te Paki Coastal Track and at Rarawa Beach experience recreational pressures that are caused predominantly by seasonal influxes of visitors. These influxes bring with them an increased risk of biosecurity threats, such as kauri disease,³³ myrtle rust (<i>Austropuccinia psidii</i>) and Argentine ants (<i>Linepithema humile</i>), as well as challenges in terms of managing waste and litter. Little recreational monitoring data exists for <i>Te Korowai</i>. Looking to the future, this requires improvement to ensure that the management and prioritisation of recreational opportunities can be given careful consideration. • Climate change may affect the viability of the existing coastal track and the networks and facilities of other walks in the area, so alternatives may be needed in the future.
--------	---

Continued on next page

³³ Kauri trees are under threat from a disease caused by the fungus-like pathogen *Phytophthora agathidicida* (PA).

Opportunities	• Provide opportunities for visitors to enjoy, learn about and understand the natural values of the different ecosystems in this Place. However, this will need to be planned and managed carefully to protect the natural values from the pressures the visitors could bring. • Create short walks from Pārengarenga Harbour through the forest to Kōkota and back to Te Arai to showcase different ecosystems, remnant forests, dunelands, wetlands and coastal habitats. • Collaborate with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and wider stakeholders to enable the creation of Great Walks or short walk alternatives in a way that supports their natural values. • Work with others to increase advocacy and improve visitor awareness and behaviour. This will help to protect the sensitive, fragile coastal habitats and species from human disturbance. Managed access may be needed in some areas, as well as educating visitors to understand the need to behave responsibly and to protect taonga.
Policies	6.3.4.1 Work with local authorities, relevant agencies, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the public and users of this Place to educate them on the fragility of the landscape and the threatened species they support so that these groups are aware of appropriate ways to enjoy recreation here, particularly in the use of vehicles. 6.3.4.2 Allow vehicle access to: a) roads and formed tracks in accordance with Policies 11.13.1–11.13.13 in Part Three; and b) Te Paki Stream in accordance with Policies 11.13.1–11.13.13 in Part Three. 6.3.4.3 May remove vehicle access to Te Paki Stream, either temporarily or permanently, in response to the closure of vehicle access along Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē. 6.3.4.4 Work with local authorities, relevant agencies, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the public and users of this Place to understand, plan for and manage the effects of climate change on existing tracks and facilities. 6.3.4.5 Work with local authorities, relevant agencies, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the public and users of this Place to remove the threat of wild dogs on recreational activities. 6.3.4.6 Work with Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Board for concession activities that require access through Te Korowai lands and waters into Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē. The matters for assessing vehicle authorisations can be found in Policies 11.13.1–11.13.16 in Part Three.



Rarawa Beach estuary. Photo: Alannah Lett

7. Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki The Waters

He iti marangai, tū ana te pāhukahuka,
he iti pioke nō Rangaunu, he au tōna

Small although the dogfish shark may be, great is its wake,
as it traverses Rangaunu Harbour

Ngāti Kuri Pou Taiao Environmental Management Plan (2018)

7.1 Ngā kōrero mō ngā wai

Overview

Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki includes Houhora Harbour, Rangaunu Harbour and a stretch of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē on its western boundary, parts of which are managed by Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Board (Figure 6).

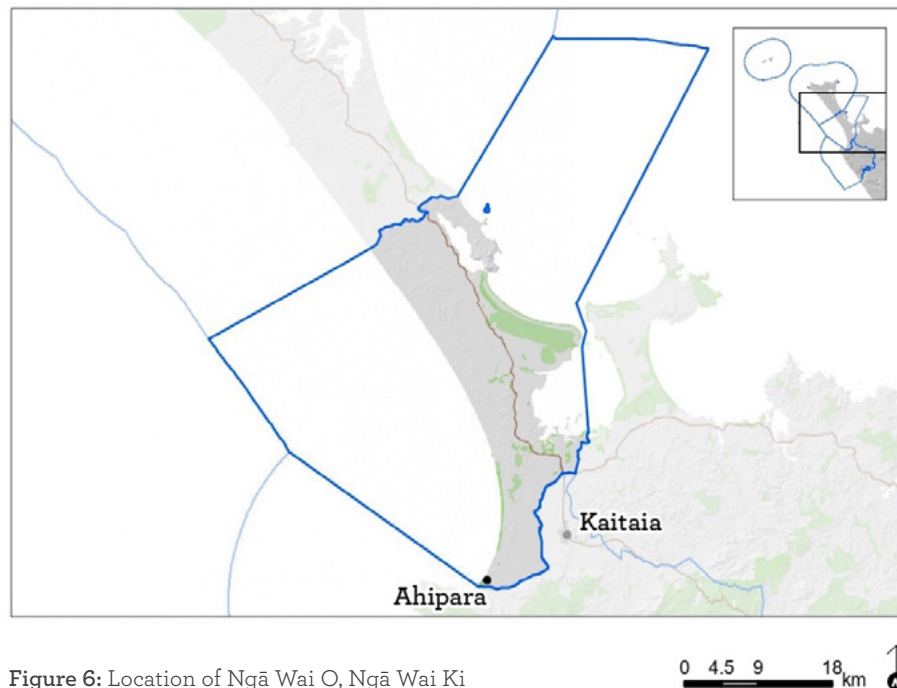


Figure 6: Location of Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki

Freshwater systems

The freshwater systems of *Te Korowai* are diverse, including mountain streams, rivers, underground aquifers, wetlands and dunes lakes. The sections of this Place with the heading 'Freshwater systems' include information and policies that apply to all freshwater systems across Te Hiku. These sections guide how the elements of the freshwater systems on Te Korowai lands and waters will be managed. They also identify the values of the system as a whole that need further support, protection or advocacy by Te Papa Atawhai.

There are two broad types of freshwater systems in *Te Korowai*. The freshwater systems in the southern part, covered mainly by Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki, are made up of the larger catchments of the Rotokakahi, Awaroa and Awanui Rivers. The tributaries of the Rotokakahi and Awaroa Rivers run from their headwaters in the Warawara and Herekino Forests down to Whangapē Harbour. The flow of these rivers is usually low but increases quickly in storms and heavy rain, leading to short-term flooding.

The tributaries of the Awanui River flow from fast-running headwaters to slower-flowing lowland streams and rivers that provide habitat for at least 10 native fish species, including tuna/shortfin and longfin eels, banded kōkopu (*Galaxias fasciatus*), redfin bully (*Gobiomorphus huttoni*) and torrentfish (*Cheimarrichthys fosteri*). Streams run from the northern side of the Mangamuka range through the Awanui flats into Rangaunu Harbour.

The freshwater systems from Kaitaia northwards are underground systems that connect the dunes, lakes and wetlands with the coastlines and harbours. These systems include permanent lakes formed up to 6,500 years ago, when a drop in sea level at the end of the last glacial maximum caused multiple beach ridges and troughs to form. Wind-induced erosion combined with the leaching and cementation of iron and aluminium to form a pan layer that impeded drainage subsequently led to the formation of lakes and wetlands. The permanent lakes provide an important food basket and harvest area for cultural materials such as kuta/tall spike sedge (*Eleocharis sphacelata*) for Te Hiku iwi. The shallow, temporal lake systems within the region come and

go depending on the groundwater levels, and these groundwater-fed systems are very susceptible to changes in surrounding land use.

Freshwater systems within this Place include the Sweetwater Dune Lakes Conservation Area, Lake Ngātu Recreation Reserve, Motutangi Scenic Reserve, Kaimaumau Scientific Reserve, Muiata Pā Historic Reserve and East Beach Conservation Area. The coastal wetland habitats of Kaimaumau and Motutangi provide an unbroken area of transition between sea and fresh water. These diverse habitats include sandy beaches, small dunes, estuarine peat bogs, semi-fertile swamps and stabilised dunes with native shrublands.

The peat bogs and wetlands represent a depleted habitat type within Aotearoa due to historical development and modifications. They provide important habitat for several threatened and regionally significant species, including weweia/New Zealand dabchick (*Poliocephalus rufopectus*), matuku-hūrepo/Australasian bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*), pūweto/spotless crane (*Zapornia tabuensis*), moho pererū/banded rail (*Hypotaenidia philippensis*), mātātā/fernbird (*Poodytes punctatus*) and waikaka. Unfortunately, however, the aspects that make these areas unique for biodiversity also make them particularly susceptible to hazards such as fire.

The dune lakes in this Place include Lake Ngātu, Split Lake, Lake Rotorua and Wai Te Huahua/Lake Heather, each of which has a unique whakapapa. The water quality of these lakes is declining due to factors such as pest fish, land-use practices and water takes. Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and community efforts in conservation restoration projects around these dune lakes have been successful, resulting in the revitalisation of this Place, particularly at Lake Ngātu. Little is known, however, about how water takes within the surrounding area to support the growth of the horticulture industry will affect this Place.

There are also significant freshwater systems within other Places:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Ngā Onepū O,
Ngā Onepū Ki | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Dune lakes within Te Paki, including Lake Ngakeketa (page 47, Volume I) |
| Ngā Ngahere O,
Ngā Ngahere Ki | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Awaroa and Awanui Rivers (page 93, Volume I)• Wairoa River (page 94, Volume I) |

Additional features of Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki

Houhora and Rangaunu Harbours on the east coast provide habitats for a wide variety of seabirds. Rangaunu Harbour, in particular, provides high-quality habitat, with karepō, saltmarshes and manawa forests. The impacts of dredging these harbours are a concern but also present an opportunity to work with other agencies to advocate for improved practices.

Like the other Places within *Te Korowai*, the culture and history of this Place are strongly influenced by early Māori habitation and later by Europeans seeking kauri resin. However, Muiata Pā is the only actively managed historic site within Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki.

The white sandy beaches of this Place and the easily accessible fishing spots on the coast are popular with both locals and visitors. Game bird hunting also provides recreational and food-gathering opportunities. The facilities and walking track at Lake Ngātu are particularly popular with locals and are well used by waka ama groups. Like other Places within *Te Korowai*, the opportunity for additional recreational activities here exists across private land, cultural redress land, and Te Korowai lands and waters. Working to identify these, particularly where they support the tourism-focused economic aspirations of Te Hiku iwi, is an exciting opportunity to be explored together.

7.2 Ngā hua Outcomes

Freshwater systems

The following outcomes are sought for all freshwater systems within *Te Korowai*:

- 7.2.1** The community understands and values the importance of the significant wetlands and lakes that feature in *Te Korowai*. These taonga are healthy, sustain improved populations of indigenous flora and fauna, and can provide materials for ongoing customary use.
- 7.2.2** All lakes, including dune lakes, have healthy and resilient ecosystems with clean water, allowing increased customary activities and recreational opportunities.
- 7.2.3** Land uses are suited to the land available and are sustainable. Soils are nourished and replenished, and wetlands maintain their water-holding capacity. There is reduced sedimentation into waterways, erosion is reduced, and natural habitats and species are thriving.
- 7.2.4** Waterways, springs and wetlands are protected from livestock and other uses, and discharges to these waters from activities are minimised. Water is the central point for all activities, and its use is governed by sensible and agreed limits.

Additional outcomes for Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki

The following outcomes are also sought for this Place:

- 7.2.5** The vast gumhole-pocketed wetland priority ecosystem units of Motutangi Swamp, Waihuahua Swamp and Kaimaumau-Motutangi wetland are being progressively restored, and fire management enables communities of orchids, wetland plant associations and birds to flourish. Restoration projects for the Kaimaumau-Motutangi wetland are in full force, following its devastation by fire, and the

natural environment is replenishing as a result of partnerships and relationships with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders. The natural dune systems are being maintained at Ngārui-o-te-Marangai Beach/East Beach.

- 7.2.6** Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki continues to offer water- and land-based recreational opportunities where these do not damage the natural or cultural values of this Place. The lakes are full of native flora and fauna and provide active and passive recreational opportunities, which are enhanced through collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders.
- 7.2.7** Motorised boats are only used in Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki for cultural activities by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in accordance with tikanga Māori and Te Papa Atawhai management purposes. Motorised vehicles can park and access the lakes via existing car parks and amenity areas, but these are limited to the outskirts of the lakes to ensure no ecological damage through direct disturbance.
- 7.2.8** Aircraft landings and sightings (including drones) are infrequent in Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki, and landings on the lakes within this Place are not undertaken unless in emergency situations.
- 7.2.9** The numbers of wild animals, such as horses, dogs and cattle, that permeate Te Korowai lands and waters in Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki are decreasing through partnerships with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders.
- 7.2.10** The management of freshwater habitats is undertaken in an integrated and holistic manner, ki uta ki tai. Te Papa Atawhai works collaboratively with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to improve the health of ecosystems in this Place.
- 7.2.11** Sites of cultural and historic significance on Te Korowai lands and waters in Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki are being recognised and valued in the community.

7.3 Ngā uara, ngā take, ngā kaupapa here mō Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki

The Waters: values, issues, opportunities and policies

7.3.1 TE TIRITI O WAITANGI RELATIONSHIPS

Treaty settlement information (see Appendix 1, Volume II)	- Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015 - NgāiTakoto Claims Settlement Act 2015
Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki	- Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) with Treaty settlements within Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki are: - Te Aupōuri; and - NgāiTakoto. - The NgāiTakoto Claims Settlement Act 2015 recognises Lake Rotorua, Wai Te Huahua, Lake Waikaramu, Kowhai Beach, the southern part of Waipapakauri Beach Conservation Area and Lake Ngātu Recreation Reserve as Statutory Acknowledgement Areas (see Appendix 1, Volume II).
Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) planning documents for this Place	- Te Iwi o NgāiTakoto Environmental Plan (2017) - Ngā Tai e Rua o Te Aupōuri Environmental Management Plan (2018)
Values	- Lake Waikaramu is a shallow inland lake that was named after the tūpuna Waikaramu because ‘when you needed it, the lake was never around’. This was likened to the traits of the tūpuna Waikaramu, who also could not be found when needed. In the summer, this lake dried up at a time when the iwi required the water, forcing them to rely on a number of nearby puna that provided an alternative ongoing water supply through the year. An orchard was established near the lake and was sustained by its waters, providing fruit for those living at nearby settlements. Māori obtained fish from the lake, including species of mudfish and eels, as well as wild fowl. - Lake Rotorua and Wai Te Huahua were important sources of tuna/eels (<i>Anguilla</i> spp.), other fish species and various birds. Kuta was also collected from these lakes and used in weaving. In many instances, small whānau groups settled around the lakes and were sustained by them. - Lake Ngātu, west of Waipapakauri, is a dune lake located at the northern end of Te Make. This lake once provided fresh water, food-gathering opportunities and other resources to iwi as they travelled throughout this rohe, especially because it lay on the main route for iwi travelling to and from Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē. - Various papakāinga were sustained by the resources of Lake Ngātu. Tuna, various other fish species and birds were collected from the other lakes in this area, but Lake Ngātu was renowned for the kuta that grew in its waters and was used to make cloaks. The association with clothes and the body also made it an appropriate place to wash and bathe.

Continued on next page

- Kowhai Beach was a major kāinga located at Houhora on Rangaunu Harbour, and there were other settlements at the various access sites to the peninsula. These areas were occupied year round, as well as seasonally, to take advantage of the substantial fishing resources within and outside Rangaunu Harbour that supported the settlements at Houhora.
- The Houhora Peninsula and its beaches, including Kowhai Beach, were used to access the traditional fishing grounds and as a launching point for sea-going waka that would carry out seasonal deep-sea fishing trips to catch pakake, hāpuka and other kai moana. This included significant amounts of shellfish, such as tuangi/New Zealand cockles (*Austrovenus stutchburyi*), korona/mussels and tio repe/rock oysters (*Saccostrea cucullata*), as well as many fish species that were caught using nets and hand lines with baited hooks and lures.
- Kai moana was also harvested in the inner Rangaunu Harbour during low tide, because the pipi (*Paphies australis*) beds in the middle of the harbour were substantial. Pāpahu/porpoises, hīra/seals, penguins and pakake also came into the harbour during certain seasons and contributed to the local diet.
- The Waipapakauri ramp is acknowledged as an important papakāinga and access point into Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē. Toheroa (*Paphies ventricosa*) and other shellfish from the beach were often harvested using hand lines and nets.
- The Waipapakauri ramp is part of an area known to some as Ngāpae, with Waipapakauri located further inland. When the ancestor Tōhē arrived at Ngāpae during his hīkoi along the beach to the south in search of his daughter, Raninikura, he found stranded pakake and so named the location after that event.
- The origins of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē are found at Maungapiko, where Tōhe departed on his hīkoi to see his daughter, Raninikura, who had settled in the south. As he passed along the beach, he named areas and locations, and these names have been preserved through many generations and are still in use today.

7.3.2 NATURAL VALUES

Values

Freshwater systems

- Freshwater wetlands provide a number of important ecosystem services, including flood protection, nutrient filtering and sediment trapping. They are also home to a variety of native flora and fauna, many of which are threatened or at risk, and provide numerous customary resources and food.

Additional values for Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki

- The marine habitats and ecosystems in this Place, including Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē and Houhora and Rangaunu Harbours, are diverse and important (see Appendix 8, Volume II).

Continued on next page

- Lake Rotoroa is a stronghold for northern hydatella (*Trithuria inconspicua*). This small aquatic herb is Threatened – Nationally Critical and only found in lakes in western Northland (Sweetwater, Kaiwi and on the Pouto Peninsula). Its whakapapa is important in that it is ‘primitive’ and one of the ancestors of modern flowering plants. In many lakes where it used to occur, populations have disappeared, and this is thought to be linked to decreasing water quality. It also occurs in Lake Ngātu.
- The priority ecosystem units of the Kaimaumau wetland and Motutangi Swamp include habitats such as kahikatoa/mānuka (*Leptospermum hoipolloi*) shrubland and gumland, waewaekākā/tangle fern (*Gleichenia dicarpa* and *G. microphylla*) fernland, and sedgelands of various sedge species. It is home to many threatened or at-risk plants, including one of the two known populations of *Thelymitra* (a) (Ahipara), *Pimelea orthia* subsp. *orthia*, yellow bladderwort (Lake Waikaramu), *Todea barbara*, fountain sedge (*Lepidosperma neozelandicum*) and *Spiranthes australis*. The Kaimaumau–Motutangi priority ecosystem unit also contains the Kaimaumau Scientific Reserve (955 ha) and is the only freshwater wetland in Northland that exceeds 1,000 ha.

Issues

Freshwater systems

- Freshwater ecosystems are affected by changes in the water cycle, drainage, pollution, water abstraction, sedimentation, nutrient enrichment, vegetation clearance and invasion by pests. These have had significant consequences for the freshwater biodiversity in *Te Korowai*, which is vulnerable to changes in water quality, water flows, predation, habitat loss and degradation.
- Changes to waterways, such as reduced fish passage, changes in flow, sedimentation and increased nutrients, can reduce ecosystem values by reducing habitat quality and inhibiting fish migration, threatening native species at various stages of their life cycles.
- Climate change presents significant risks to freshwater ecosystems by affecting the timing, amount and intensity of rainfall. Sea level rise could affect aquifers, and both the demand for and availability of water could shift because of climate change. Flood and drought events are both likely to increase, and drought events could become much more common. Erosion, scouring and increased sedimentation resulting from changes in water flows can damage ecosystems.
- The vegetation within the Kaimaumau–Motutangi wetland has been repeatedly modified by fire. Fire-resistant woody and herbaceous weeds recolonise the wetland after fire, and their spread is accelerated with each successive fire, leading to them now being more dominant than most native plants.

Continued on next page

- Weed invasion of the wetland system in Kaimaumau-Motutangi is the most serious management problem, alongside fire risk. If nothing is done to curtail the spread of Sydney golden wattle (*Acacia longifolia*), hakea (*Hakea sericea* and *H. gibbosa*) and stiff bottlebrush (*Melaleuca linearis*), they will continue to dominate the old foredune and the ridges in between wetlands and lakes.

Additional issues for Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki

- Fishing, both recreational and commercial, is the most significant threat to coastal and offshore marine biodiversity in this Place.
- There is currently limited understanding of the likely risks and effects of climate change, examples of which include the loss of or damage to coastal ecosystems and important breeding habitats due to erosion; the contamination and sedimentation of coastal and estuarine habitats as a result of increased or changed stormwater flows; the loss of important breeding habitat; acidification of the oceans; increased lake temperatures, leading to toxic algal blooms; and changes in feeding zones.

Opportunities

Freshwater systems

- Advocate through the Resource Management Act 1991 processes to ensure that any adverse effects of sedimentation resulting from activities are avoided, remedied or mitigated. The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (2010)³⁴ and regional and district plans contain provisions to reduce sedimentation-causing effects in coastal areas, and the National Environmental Standards for Freshwater (2020)³⁵ also play a role in protecting and preserving the natural wetlands that are both inland and in the coastal marine area.
- Support ongoing active management, planting and pest control at wetlands and waterways in this Place.

Additional opportunities for Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki

- Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to facilitate collaborative efforts to expand the marine protected areas network.
- Restore areas such as Kaimaumau-Motutangi wetland following fire events to enhance natural values.
- Build upon the connections with natural areas and employment opportunities that Jobs for Nature has already created for the community in this Place to generate further conservation work that enhances wellbeing.
- Undertake wattle control trials to reduce and remove this plant from the Kaimaumau-Motutangi wetland.

Continued on next page

³⁴ doc.govt.nz/nzcps-2010

³⁵ environment.govt.nz/acts-and-regulations/regulations/national-environmental-standards-for-freshwater

Policies

Freshwater systems

- 7.3.2.1** Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), regional councils, territorial authorities, private landowners, Fish & Game New Zealand, statutory agencies, primary industries and other conservation stakeholders both on and off Te Korowai lands and waters to:
- a) minimise sediment and nutrient inputs into waterways;
 - b) encourage initiatives for riparian planting;
 - c) advocate to relevant agencies to retire riparian areas from grazing;
 - d) protect hydrological processes, including water levels;
 - e) exclude stock from waterways;
 - f) control pest plants and animals and other aquatic pests;
 - g) support an increase in site-based restoration activities within priority freshwater catchments and high-priority wetlands;
 - h) encourage community involvement in freshwater restoration initiatives; and
 - i) improve water quality in catchments.
- 7.3.2.2** Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), conservation stakeholders, and local and regional councils to advocate for appropriate water quality and quantity provisions in district and regional plans.
- 7.3.2.3** Support the enhanced protection of all wetlands, puna and riparian areas on Te Korowai lands and waters as sites that provide important cultural and environmental benefits, including but not limited to:
- a) mahinga kai habitats;
 - b) the provision of resources for cultural use;
 - c) cultural wellbeing;
 - d) the maintenance and improvement of water quality, including water courses that feed into them; and
 - e) natural flood and drought protection.
- 7.3.2.4** Support the protection of a fully representative range of wetlands, dune lakes and waterways across *Te Korowai* in collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), private landowners, regional councils, territorial authorities and other conservation stakeholders.

Continued on next page

-
- 7.3.2.5** Continue to undertake maintenance and enhancement activities in wetlands within Te Korowai lands and waters to protect and restore their ecosystem values.
 - 7.3.2.6** Seek to maintain the ecological health of lakes, waterways and waterbodies on Te Korowai lands and waters by:
 - a) undertaking periodic monitoring to detect new pest plant and pest fish populations; and
 - b) assessing the feasibility of eradicating existing or new pest plant and pest fish populations.
 - 7.3.2.7** Continue to undertake, or support others to undertake, regular fauna surveys to improve and build on the current knowledge of freshwater populations.
 - 7.3.2.8** Undertake ecological assessments of all wetlands within Te Korowai lands and waters to understand environmental baselines.
 - 7.3.2.9** Facilitate and/or support the establishment of programmes to restore and expand wetland habitats. These programmes are developed and implemented to achieve a measurable increase in the quality of wetlands, and could include but not be limited to:
 - a) restoring existing wetlands;
 - b) removing and/or controlling pest plants and animals;
 - c) using technology, such as constructed wetlands, where feasible;
 - d) expanding the size of those wetlands, where feasible;
 - e) re-establishing wetlands adjacent to lakes and rivers where land is available and conditions remain suitable for wetlands;
 - f) restoring appropriate terrestrial indigenous vegetation that buffers wetlands and lakes; and
 - g) identifying and setting aside land for the purpose of wetland creation and enhancement.
 - 7.3.2.10** Apply pest control tools in a manner that manages adverse effects on waterways and indigenous species.
 - 7.3.2.11** Prioritise the ability of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to use Te Korowai lands and waters as areas where food and customary resources can be gathered.
-

Continued on next page

Additional policies for Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki

- 7.3.2.12** Advocate for and support the restoration and maintenance of ecological health in Hokianga, Pārengarenga, Rangaunu, Whangapē, Herekino and Houhora Harbours in partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), Northland Regional Council and the community.
- 7.3.2.13** Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) alongside local kāinga such as Mahimaru, Kaimaumau, Waipapakauri, Waimanoni and Awanui to align Te Papa Atawhai conservation priorities with community conservation needs and priorities where practicable, and ensure that there is active involvement concerning the management of sites within this Place.
- 7.3.2.14** Explore and investigate approaches to reduce and minimise the effects and growth of wattle in the Kaimaumau-Motutangi wetland.
- 7.3.2.15** Undertake approaches to reduce and minimise the effects and growth of wattle in the Kaimaumau-Motutangi wetland, as outlined in Policy 7.3.2.14.

7.3.3 HISTORIC VALUES

Values	- This Place includes many mapped sites of significance to Māori, and there are clusters of archaeological sites located around its wetlands and waterways. - Muiata Pā, which is located on low-lying farmland north of Rangaunu Bay near the east coast of the Aupōuri Peninsula, is the only actively managed historic site on Te Korowai lands and waters in Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki. The values of this pā are in its cultural connections, its rarity as a previous wetland site and the fact that it was one of three pā located along what was once the Motutangi River. When considered together, Te Tomo a Tāwhana and Muiata Pā hold high potential for interpretation of an extremely rare archaeological landscape.
Issues	- Archaeological sites and sites of significance on Te Korowai lands and waters, such as Muiata Pā, are located in areas that are subject to constant land-use pressures. Former agricultural land is being converted for horticultural use and there is pressure for conversions to lifestyle sections near Muiata Pā due to the land's outlook over Houhora and Rangaunu Harbours. - Except for Muiata Pā, little is known about the sites of significance to Māori in this Place.
Opportunities	Further assess and verify knowledge of the historic and cultural heritage on Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place, and tell these historic stories to the wider community and visitors.

Continued on next page

Policies	7.3.3.1 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and the public to identify sites of cultural and historic importance within Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki. 7.3.3.2 Support tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to develop wāhi tapu management plan(s) and promote the active management of wāhi tapu sites in Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki (where requested). 7.3.3.3 Improve the availability of information and sharing of knowledge about the historic and cultural heritage in Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki. 7.3.3.4 Should not give access to wāhi tapu or sites of cultural significance that are identified as having restricted access in a wāhi tapu management plan without tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) approval (except in an emergency situation).
7.3.4 RECREATIONAL VALUES	
Values	• Water-based activities, such as walking around the wetlands and lakes, waka ama, kayaking, and canoeing, are present in this Place. Recreational opportunities are also present at both Houhora and Rangaunu Harbours. • Wildlife viewing and scenic views are highly valued by the community. There are opportunities for wildlife viewing in and around the harbours, various wetlands and lakes. • The wetlands, lakes and waterways within Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki and the other Places provide active and passive recreational pursuits. • Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the local community value high-quality freshwater areas to swim in and to collect food and resources from. • The education of all visitors, including the local community and tourists, is an important function within Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki. The importance of wetlands and lakes is a focal point when considering the current and future state of the environment.
Issues	• There is a lack of understanding when tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) place rāhui on waterbodies following water-related deaths. • Water quality affects the ability to enjoy Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki and to collect kai and cultural resources in this Place. • Dog access, both domestic and wild, has the potential to adversely affect the values of this Place. • Connections between and across significant waterbodies often cross private and public lands. • Fire risk is a major issue to many of the sites within Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki. • There is a need for ongoing management of the infrastructure in this Place.

Continued on next page

Section 7.3 table continued

Opportunities	• Enhance storytelling to inform visitors and locals of the cultural importance and significance of sites and the reasons why rāhui are put in place. • Advocate to regional and local councils to promote rules and regulations that improve water quality. • Improve the enforcement and signage for domestic dogs and notify of the potential for wild dogs to be present. • Work with private landowners, councils and tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to increase public access across and between waterbodies.
Policies	7.3.4.1 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), regional councils and territorial authorities to improve visitor awareness and understanding of Māori customs, protocols, beliefs and values as they relate to waterbodies. 7.3.4.2 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), regional councils and territorial authorities to minimise the effects of dogs, wild horses, wild cattle and other animals within this Place (see Policies 11.14–11.16).



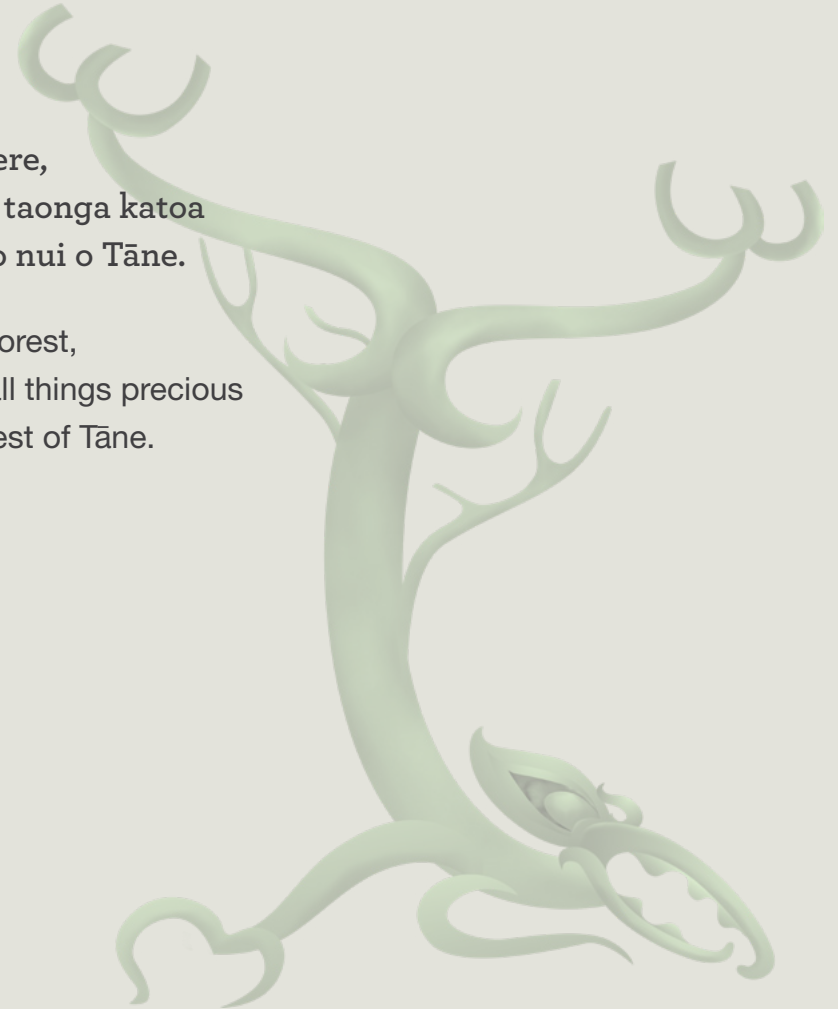
Oranga Whenua, Oranga Tāngata Jobs for Nature project, Te Aupōuri. Photo: Department of Conservation

8. Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki The Forests

E whakaora ake te ngāhere,
ngā maunga, ngā tamariki me ngā taonga katoa
e whakaheke mai kei roto i te wao nui o Tāne.

To restore the health of our forest,
the mountains, the living offspring and all things precious
which descend from the great forest of Tāne.

Warawara Management Plan



8.1 Ngā kōrero mō ngā Ngahere

Overview

Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki extends from Hokianga Harbour in the south towards Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki in the north across to the Pairatahi River in the east and down towards Mangataipa Scenic Reserve, extending back to Hokianga Harbour, including Kohukohu and a range of coastal settlements on the northern part of Hokianga (Figure 7). The largest township in *Te Korowai*, Kaitaia, is located within this Place.

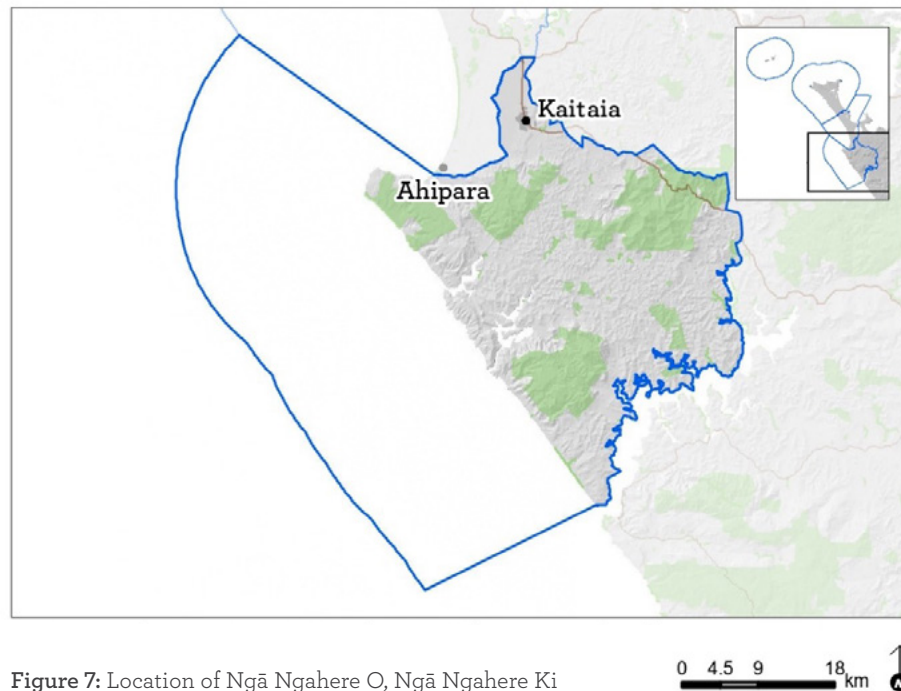


Figure 7: Location of Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki

Native forest systems

Before the arrival of humans in Aotearoa, kauri forest dominated much of the land of *Te Korowai*.

About 23 million years ago, the shape of Te Ika a Maui/the North Island was quite different: the Northland peninsula and East Cape were side by side on the Australian Plate, and the Pacific Plate subducted underneath them. At some point, the two plates became locked and subduction stopped. Pressure then built to the point where the two plates buckled against each other, with the Australian Plate being pushed downwards (to form the Northland Basin) and the Pacific Plate being pushed upwards to form a mountain range (east of the current position of Northland). Sometime after this, the locked plates started to move again and the pressure was released, causing three massive landslides to fill the Northland Basin. This event is known as the emplacement of the Northland and East Coast Allochthons. By around 18 million years ago, subduction had commenced and volcanoes were active along the eastern and western sides of the Northland Peninsula (at this time, the East Coast had been pushed away and the Bay of Plenty had started to form).

The Ahipara Plateau is the remains of one of these volcanoes (Maunganui Bluff is another), while Warawara, Herekino, Maungataniwha and parts of Te Paki are made up of rocks that were at the bottom of the landslide before it occurred but have since been thrust to the top. These parts of Northland, along with Tohoraha, have been above sea level since this time and have been refuges where forests could form and species could evolve.

Around 10,000 years ago, at the height of the last glacial maximum, the sea level was higher and these parts of *Te Korowai* were islands. Northland was too far north for glaciers to form, so these islands remained as refuges for many of the species of Aotearoa that had been displaced from further south. By 6,500 years ago, the sea level was dropping and the islands started to join up to the mainland, forming the Aupōuri Peninsula, which would have had a mix of forests, lakes and wetlands, fringed by dunes.

Around 750 years ago, much of the coastal forest along the west coast and Aupōuri Peninsula was burned in huge fires – there are charcoal remains in the dunes at Mitimiti – and over the last 200 years, this pattern of fragmentation has continued. Today, the largest forest areas are within Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki, with only a few areas of remnant lowland and coastal broadleaf forests occurring at the northern end of the Aupōuri Peninsula (Te Arai) and Te Paki.

The sections of this Place with the heading ‘Native forest systems’ include information and policies that apply to all native forest systems across *Te Korowai*. These sections guide how the elements of the native forest systems on Te Korowai lands and waters will be managed. They also identify the values of the system as a whole that need further support, protection or advocacy by Te Papa Atawhai.

Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki is a large contiguous area of outstanding diversity that comprises a sequence from coastal to upland forest. The vegetation in this Place provides water and soil protection on very steep slopes. Several species of flora and fauna can be found here that are either threatened, at risk or of restricted distribution, including Matthew’s forget-me-not (*Myosotis matthewsii*) and Bartlett’s koromiko (*Veronica perbella*). *Phylloglossum drummondii*, bog clubmoss (*Brownseya serpentina*) and copper beard orchid (*Calochilus herbaceus*) also occur here in gumland shrubland, while small-flowered white bindweed (*Calystegia marginata*), *Pimelea orthia* and giant hypolepis (*Hypolepis dicksonioides*) are found in coastal and lowland regenerating scrub.

This Place includes the largest areas of forest within *Te Korowai*, including the Herekino Forest, the Warawara Forest, the Raetea Forest, the forested area of the Mangamuka Gorge Scenic Reserve and the Maungataniwha Forest. These large, forested areas make up a broad corridor that almost stretches from the west coast to the east coast.

The Warawara Forest (68,857.59 ha) includes the areas formally known as Warawara Forest Sanctuary (823 ha) and Te Hura Ecological Area (990 ha) and

is considered a significant conservation site. It is home to the only population of tītīpounamu/North Island rifleman (*Acanthisitta chloris granti*) in Te Tai Tokerau. Many plant species found within the kauri forest in the Warawara Forest are either absent or poorly represented elsewhere in the ecological district, including tawari (*Ixerba brexioides*), stumpy tree fern (*Dicksonia lanata*), neinei (*Dracophyllum latifolium*), akatea (*Metrosideros albiflora*) and fan fern (*Schizaea dichotoma*).

There are also significant native forest systems within other Places:

- Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki**
 - Radar Bush, Kohuronaki Bush and Unuwahao Bush (page 63, Volume I)
 - North Cape pōhutukawa forest remnants (page 61, Volume I)
 - Foley’s Bush (Awanui floodplain) (page 63, Volume I)

Additional features of Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki

The southern and northern edges of this Place are contrasting in nature, with large sand dunes and coastal settlements to the south and the rocky outcrops of Tauroa Point and rugged west coast of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē to the north.

The Northland Allochthon process created a significant geological feature in this Place – Runaruna/Te Manawa o Ninihi, Northland’s only active cold mud volcano (see Appendix 9, Volume II). The 65-million-year-old Punakitere Sandstone that the mud sits on is porous enough to allow ancient, trapped sea water and gases up to the surface, which has created a 3-metre-high volcano made of salty, mineral-filled, bubbling mud that sits on the surface and has multiple vents that release mixes of carbon dioxide, methane and salt water.

This Place contains only two actively managed historic sites on Te Korowai lands and waters: the old Kohukohu School (in Kohukohu Historic Reserve) and Tauroa Point. The area is rich in archaeological sites, which is a testament to the ongoing tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) occupation here.

Pā, terraces and middens are common in this Place, as are trenches, ditches, dams and sluices. There are also gumholes in this area, providing evidence of

the strong gum-digging history at Tauroa Point. The *Tinana* waka made landfall at Tauroa in about 1300CE and returned to Hawaiiki. The area was named Tauroa after this event, meaning the 'long wait'.

Both Te Rarawa and Ngāpuhi have strong cultural associations with Hokianga Harbour. The two smaller harbours of Herekino and Whangapē are equally important to people in this Place because access to kai moana and other customary materials provides daily sustenance for many.

Recreation in this area reflects its two greatest assets: pristine, undeveloped coastal areas and dense, inland bush populated with a diversity of species. Despite this, backcountry tramping has been reduced over time due to the effects of kauri disease and tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) concern over the adverse effects on flora and fauna in this Place. Pests and other threats also cause major concerns to the ongoing viability of ecosystems.

8.2 Ngā hua Outcomes

Native forest systems

The following outcomes are sought for all native forest systems in *Te Korowai*:

- 8.2.1** The native forest systems within *Te Korowai* are protected from degradation. Native species are flourishing and abundant, and their populations are resilient to human-induced effects, such as climate change and the introduction of exotic species. Threatened, at-risk and regionally important species are adequately protected and managed and are able to move through the sites as they did historically due to the connected habitats.
- 8.2.2** Pest plants, such as wild ginger (*Hedychium gardnerianum*) and wandering willie, and pest animals, such as rats, possums, mustelids (stoats, weasels and ferrets), cats, wild goats, cattle, pigs and mice, are being eradicated.

- 8.2.3** Sites without kauri disease remain disease free, the effects of kauri disease are reduced within infected sites and the spread of kauri disease is slowed in all kauri sites.

- 8.2.4** Wild animals and pest animals are being reduced in the ngahere through continuous efforts and collaboration.

- 8.2.5** Kōmako/bellbirds (*Anthornis melanura melanura*) have been successfully reintroduced to suitable ngahere.

Additional outcomes for Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki

The following outcomes are also sought for this Place:

- 8.2.6** The location and history of taonga tuku iho are known but, in some instances, remain as knowledge unshared; however, the cultural significance and importance of these taonga tuku iho are recognised by all. The cultural narratives that are told about unique sites and spaces are told from a tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) perspective, and all wāhi tapu are being mapped, located using the global positioning system (GPS) and identified, including the kōrero associated with them. There is a consistent process and plan for including more sites and assessing their management needs and priorities.
- 8.2.7** The intricate, crumpled landscape of north Hokianga is dominated by the Warawara plateau and Maungataniwha and contains priority ecosystem units. The community is actively involved in the restoration of natural and cultural heritage values.
- 8.2.8** Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and communities, especially young people, are involved in enhancing the natural and cultural values of this Place and provide sustainable opportunities for their own cultural, recreational and economic aspirations.
- 8.2.9** Te Papa Atawhai supports the kaitiaki of the Warawara Forest in meeting their obligations to protect and preserve the forest for future generations.

- 8.2.10** The Warawara Forest is managed under Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i Te Taiao and has resulted in natural environments that are healthy and flourishing; pest populations and threats being controlled and monitored; ongoing monitoring and research occurring; kaitiakitanga, education, training and employment opportunities being maximised; integrated connectivity conservation being conducted; infrastructure being established and maintained; and resources being provided. As a result, the health of the forest, mountains, living offspring and all precious things that descend from the great forests of Tāne are being restored and maintained.
- 8.2.11** In the Warawara and Herekino Forests, pekapeka/northern lesser short-tailed bat (*Mystacina tuberculata*) population numbers are increasing to a point where this species is no longer vulnerable or threatened within *Te Korowai*.
- 8.2.12** The Manganuiowae catchment on the Maungataniwha Range is one of the northernmost high-forest tracts and is actively managed by Te Papa Atawhai with the support of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the community. Collaboration with the surrounding landowners and the community leads to pest control in outlying parts of the Maungataniwha Range. The result is that kūkupa/New Zealand pigeon (*Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae*), kōkako (*Callaeas wilsoni*) and the previously locally extinct kōmako have returned to soar overhead, the chorus of tūi (*Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae*) is deafening, and kiwi-nui/North Island brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*), North Island kākā (*Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis*), kākā-wairiki (*Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae novaezelandiae*) and North Island weka (*Gallirallus australis greyi*) can be heard calling at night.
- 8.2.13** At Ahipara and the Tauroa Peninsula, the kaleidoscope of diverse shrubland, coastal forest remnants, relics of Dalmatian gum-digging history, dynamic dunelands and important archaeological sites on Te Korowai lands and waters is appreciated and respected by the local community and visitors.
- 8.2.14** Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the community and Te Papa Atawhai are actively managing historic sites on Te Korowai lands and waters, priority ecosystem units, and threatened species in this Place.
- 8.2.15** Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), landcare groups and the Kaitaia community, supported by Te Papa Atawhai, raise awareness of the Herekino Forest and the natural values of the surrounding Te Korowai lands and waters and the need for their protection. These groups work towards eradicating introduced predators in the stands of mature and second-growth kauri and extensive areas of podocarp broadleaved forest.
- 8.2.16** Aircraft and drones are rarely encountered at the Ahipara, Warawara, Herekino and Raetea Forests, except for management purposes.
- 8.2.17** Re-routing options are explored where closed tracks cannot viably be reopened.
- 8.2.18** Wild animals and pest animals are being reduced in the ngāhere through continuous efforts and collaboration.
- 8.2.19** There are no unauthorised structures on Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place.

8.3 Ngā uara, ngā take, ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here mō Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki

The Forest: values, issues, opportunities and policies

8.3.1 TE TIRITI O WAITANGI RELATIONSHIPS

Treaty settlement information (see Appendix 1, Volume II)	• Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015 • Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015 • NgāiTakoto Claims Settlement Act 2015
Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki	• Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) with Treaty settlements within Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki are: – Te Rarawa (including Ngāti Kuri and Ngāti Wairupe); – NgāiTakoto; and – Te Aupōuri. • Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015 recognises Herekino Harbour, Whangapē Harbour, Hokianga Harbour, Awaroa River (Te Awaroa), Takahue River, Awanui River, Te Tai Hauāuru coastal marine area, Tauroa Peninsula and Wairoa Stream as Statutory Acknowledgement Areas (see Appendix 1, Volume II).
Treaty settlement values	Herekino Harbour and Ōwhata • The history and traditions of Māori are inextricably bound with Herekino Harbour and Ōwhata. Hapū, entwined by whakapapa and their history with the Ngāti Kuri rāua ko Ngāti Wairupe hapū, have exercised kaitiaki responsibilities over Herekino Harbour and Ōwhata for centuries, and these cultural, spiritual and historical associations reinforce tribal identity, connections and continuity over many generations, and confirm the importance of the harbour to the hapū. • The harbour catchment includes the Manukau, Orowhana, Rawhitiroa, Rarotonga/Mount Smart, Ōwhata, Puhata and Te Uhiroa lands. There are several important sites beside the harbour, including the Ōwhata and Rangikohu marae, the nearby Manukau marae, and various pā, all of which relied on the harbour resources for sustenance. The pā beside the harbour are central to the hapū living here and their histories. The harbour is also important because it is the location of several papakāinga, wāhi tapu and urupā situated at important sites. • Herekino Harbour and Ōwhata were important for people travelling from the north and south because they provided abundant food resources, including a wide variety of fish, kai moana and seaweed. The harbour was an important spawning area for tuna and provided a departure point for a sandbar that was a 20-minute row from the harbour entrance, as well as a launch point for waka heading to numerous offshore fishing grounds. The sand and stone in the harbour were also used for various purposes. Throughout the years, hapū, alongside Ngāti Kuri and Ngāti Wairupe, have exercised kaitiakitanga over the harbour and controlled its resources.

Continued on next page

- The mauri of the harbour is the life force that binds the physical and spiritual elements that generate and sustain life: all elements of the natural environment have mauri and all are connected. Mauri is a critical element of the relationship between hapū, Ōwhata and Herekino Harbour, and is fundamentally connected to the water quality and use of the adjoining lands.

Whangapē Harbour

- A pā was built beside Whangapē Harbour at the entrance to Te Awaroa around the early 1600s. The pā was given the name Rangiputa and became the gateway to abundant food supplies and other resources obtainable from the harbour. Te Awaroa flows into the harbour and provided quick access to the east coast via Takahue, which is situated at the head of the river. The Rotokakahi River also flows into Whangapē Harbour and links to the Paihia, Rotokakahi, Te Awaroa and Manganuiowae river catchments.
- There are a number of important sites on the harbour, including various pā that are central to Māori history. The harbour is also important because it is the location of several papakāinga and wāhi tapu situated at important sites.
- Whangapē Harbour is of great cultural and historic importance and has always been used as a transport route, being the main artery to Hokianga, to the Muriwhenua Stream and into the hinterland. It also provided abundant food resources, including tuna, other species of fish and other kai moana, as well as access to hunting grounds for game birds and kiore (*Rattus exulans*). The harbour also provided sand and stone that were used for various purposes. Throughout the years, Te Rarawa hapū have exercised kaitiakitanga over the harbour and accessed its resources.

Te Awaroa

- Te Awaroa, meaning ‘long river’ and named after its physical characteristics, runs from Whangapē Harbour on the west coast to Takahue, which is inland. The traditional kaitiaki of Te Awaroa were the hapū of Tūmoana iwi. The iwi of Te Rarawa evolved from Tūmoana under the leadership of Tarutaru and continued to exercise kaitiakitanga over Te Awaroa. Ihutara, an infamous tūpuna and rangatira of Tūmoana who lived in the 16th century, built the famous Rangiputa Pā at the Whangapē entrance of Te Awaroa. In more recent times, a second pā called Okakewai was built at the Takahue end of the river. These pā were heavily fortified to guard access to Te Awaroa, and Te Pā and his wife Ngamotu, who was the daughter of Tarutaru and mother of Poroa, occupied Okakewai Pā in the early part of the 19th century. Kahi, who was the son of Tarutaru and brother of Ngamotu, was killed at Okakewai Pā while visiting his sister following the well-known battle Te Mutunga o Te Riri o Te Rarawa ki Hukatere. The body of Kahi was taken back to his papakāinga at Waireia by way of Te Awaroa. Later, a new papakāinga was established on Te Awaroa at Whangapē, which was called Okakewai in memory of the incident resulting in the death of Kahi.

Continued on next page

Takahue and Awanui Rivers

- The history and traditions of Māori are inextricably bound with the Takahue and Awanui Rivers and their tributaries that join and flow from Takahue through Kaitaia, Lake Tangonge and Awanui to Rangaunu Harbour. The tributaries flow from Maungataniwha, Takahue, Okahu and other areas and converge at the Awanui River in Kaitaia, which traditionally fed into the Tangonge wetland system, through the river and on to Rangaunu Harbour. Māori living in these areas drew significant resources from the rivers. The river and wetland network link to underground waterways and once provided abundant food resources to those who built their kāinga beside the rivers and their tributaries and who managed part of the area as one of the largest swamp gardens in the country, covering an area of about 15 km².
- This area was used for aquatic and dry crops and had a wide range of waterfowl and a diverse freshwater fishery. In the past, large numbers of people were supported by this area, and the cultural, spiritual and historical associations of this Place reinforced the tribal identity, connections and continuity over many generations, confirming the importance of the awa and wetlands. The tūpuna Toakai, who was a descendant of Tūmoana, rangatira of the *Tinana* waka, also settled and established his descendants in the area of the waterways and wetlands extending from Takahue through the Awanui River to Rangaunu Harbour.
- The Awanui River flows through Kaitaia to Rangaunu Harbour. The river was the main mode of transport historically and provided fresh water for people living in the various pā and papakāinga above and alongside it, especially Waimanoni and Māhimaru. It was also a source of food, including tuna, banded kōkopu, īnanga (*Galaxias maculatus*) and kanae/flathead grey mullet (*Mugil cephalus*). The Awanui River is the junction between the east, west, north and south and provided access to the seasonal campsites both inland and on the coast. Māori travelled along the river inland to the Maungataniwha Range, Rangaunu Harbour and Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē.
- Historically, the Takahue River system provided a link from Whangapē across to the Muriwhenua Stream and Rangaunu Harbour on the east coast, along the Takahue River through Kaitaia, and on to the Awanui River and Awanui. The Takahue River flows through the Takahue valley, which was extremely rich in resources and teeming with birdlife, providing a seasonal source of certainty for the hunting and gathering communities that relied on the river and its tributaries for survival.
- Several sites of importance to tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) are located along the Takahue and Awanui Rivers, including nohoanga, pā, battle sites, mahinga kai and wāhi tapu. The Tangonge carving was unearthed in 1920 from a stream in Pukepoto that fed into Lake Tangonge when the lake was drained for farming in a government scheme. The Tangonge carving has become established as the earliest example of East Polynesian style carving in Aotearoa, giving it international archaeological significance. The whole area is also part of a mahinga kai system that was among the largest in Polynesia.

Continued on next page

Wairoa River

- There is a long history of association with the Wairoa River. Named by Kupe, the river is a confluence of a number of tributaries stemming from five separate catchments (Te Wainui, Te Ngaere, Ngā Kororo, Matatarahea and Waitehuia). The river has been historically utilised as a mahinga kai, a means of waka travel, a geographical demarcation point and for domestic use, including bathing, recreation and the extraction of water. It is also a site of residence for a local taniwha, Paraweta, so there are aspects of the river that remain sacred.
- The river has been used as a source of kai for centuries. Numerous fresh- and saltwater species of fish have been caught, including tuna, karawaka and īnanga, and watercress has also been harvested from these waters. The river remains a life source for tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) of Ahipara.

Te Tai Hauāuru and Tauroa Peninsula

- Te Tai Hauāuru coastal marine area starts at Hokianga Harbour and includes Whangapē and Ōwhata, extending up to Tauroa, Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē and Hukatere. Many awa drain into the harbours and a number flow directly to the coast. These include Waipuna Creek, Waihopai River, Wairoa Bay, Te Waka Stream, Waiparahoanga Stream, Matihetihe Stream, Taikarawa Stream, Waikare Stream, Ngatuna Stream, Waitaha Stream, Kokopurawaru Stream, Hauturu Stream, Puapua Stream, Waikiore Stream, Orongomai Stream, Taumotara Stream, Waiatua Stream, Waikeri Creek, Mōkau Bay, Hunahuna Stream, Hukatere Stream, Tanutanu Stream, Omata Stream, Okura River, Harihaia Stream, Pukerua Creek, Parihari Stream, Wairoa Stream, Waingawha Creek, Te Karaka Creek and Waihi Creek.
- Te Tai Hauāuru (Ngā Tae o Te Uru)³⁶ is of great cultural, physical and historic importance. It has always been a source of sustenance and a pathway for those living in all parts of the rohe. It is considered a taonga and a vast resource with an abundance of fish, seafood, sand, stone, seaweed and other resources. The food-gathering practices in this area are determined by astronomical and lunar calendars that have been enhanced by many generations of use. The food obtained along the coast is a part of the ongoing diet of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and, throughout the years, hapū have exercised kaitiakitanga over Te Tai Hauāuru and have used rāhui to control its resources.

Continued on next page

³⁶ An old formal saying, translated as 'Colours of the West' by H Piripi.

- The name Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē is more than just a generic name for the entirety of the northernmost beach that is part of Te Tai Hauāuru; it refers to the epic journey of Tōhē, an eponymous ancestor of the people of Te Hiku whose ancestry traces to the *Kurahaupō* waka and to the original inhabitants of Murimotu on the far north peninsula. Tōhē travelled to see his daughter, Raninikura, in the Kaipara District one last time before his death. This journey from Kapowairua/Spirits Bay along Te Tai Hauāuru occurred nearly 30 generations ago and resulted in the naming of many locations. The Tauroa Peninsula is a well-known icon in history, its occupation and use dating back to before the time of Kupe, who in his time named numerous areas and geographical land features. The *Tinana* waka landed at what was known at the time as Otia over 20 generations ago, under the leadership of Tūmoana. It was later named Tauroa by Kahutianui, the daughter of Tūmoana, to indicate the long wait she had before she received the tohu that he had safely returned to Hawaiki. There is an extensive reef adjoining the Tauroa foreshore and this is one of the most important kai moana gathering sites.

Warawara Forest (Pt Northland Conservation Park)

- The Warawara Forest comprises the historic land known as Te Kauae-o-Ruru-Wahine and a number of smaller areas that were acquired by the Crown over a period of years beginning in 1875. This area was originally 18,270 acres and includes all of Te Takanga and parts of Lower Waihou, Ōtāngaroa, Ototope, Taikarawa Stream, Whakarapa Stream, Paihia, Rotokakahi and Waireia.
- Tikanga reinforces that all land has inherent tapu, out of which comes mana, and mana whenua is derived from mana tūpuna and ahikāroa. The Warawara Forest is of paramount importance to the mana whenua and hapū of this area. Within the traditional classification of whenua ngahere, customary values and practices were in place over the whole area. Where the mana whenua of more than one hapū converged, these values and practices gained more mana and became historically entrenched with layer upon layer of occupation and use. This phenomenon embodies the concept of binding together hapū interests to create whakapapa relationships around kāinga noho and a sharing of resources.
- The Warawara Forest contains many ancestral maunga, including Papata, Moumoukai, Weka, Te Reinga, Te Rau-o-te-Aute, Tauwhare, Paparata, Poare, Tarakeha, Umawera, Ototope and Opango. It is the source of waiora, or life-giving water, that has sustained communities since they were established centuries ago by Kupe and others. It contains the springs and catchments of awa, including Moetangi Stream, Taikarawa Stream, Waikare Stream, Waitaha Stream, Hauturu Stream, Puapua Stream, Wharerimu Stream, Whakarapa Stream, Kawaka Stream, Ōtāngaroa Stream, Waihou River and Paharakeke Stream.

Continued on next page

- Historically, the Warawara Forest was one of the first areas to be occupied by Māori, and there are still numerous signs of this ancient occupation. The higher areas of the Warawara Forest were generally not occupied on a permanent basis, but many sites were set aside as tōrere, where human remains were placed, and ana or burial caves, which were used for a similar purpose. This area was also used for hunting and other food gathering, the taking of timber and other resources such as kiekie (*Freycinetia banksii*) and nīkau (*Rhopalostylis sapida*), and the collection of rongōa. The Warawara Forest includes a network of sites of historic, environmental, political and cultural significance, including wāhi tapu, wāhi pakanga, wāhi whakahirahira and pā.

8.3.2 NATURAL VALUES

Values

Native forest systems

- The vegetation and wildlife of *Te Korowai* forests are significant for their rarity in composition. Less than 2% of the original mature, ancient kauri forest is left. Fortunately, much of this is protected in the Warawara and Herekino Forests. The Herekino Forest contains the northernmost stand of mature, ancient kauri and, together with the Warawara Forest, is one of the larger areas of mature kauri forest outside the Waipoua Forest. The Herekino Forest forms a natural linkage with the Ahipara Plateau, and its mature kauri and extensive areas of podocarp forest provide an important home to many threatened and at-risk species (Appendix 7, Volume II). The gumfields at Ahipara are the best remaining example of their type: a vegetation association that has been converted to farmland elsewhere in Aotearoa.
- The Warawara Forest (Pt Northland Conservation Park), which includes the Warawara Forest Sanctuary Area and Te Hura Ecological Area, is a significant conservation site. It is a large area of outstanding diversity comprising sequences from coastal through to upland forest, as well as vegetation that provides a water and soil protection function on very steep slopes. Several species of flora and fauna that are either threatened, at risk or of restricted distribution can be found here, including a surviving population of tītipounamu, the only known population in Northland. Many plant species found within the kauri forest are either absent or poorly represented elsewhere in this Place, including tawari, stumpy tree fern, neinei, akatea and fan fern. The vegetation type on the summit of Ongaru is unusual for this area, and the associations of karaka (*Corynocarpus laevigatus*), kānuka (*Kunzea robusta*), tōwai (*Pterophylla sylvicola*), pūriri, mamaku (*Sphaeropteris medullaris*), harakeke and hebe (*Veronica* spp.) are the only examples of their type in the area. It is also a nationally important soil site, being a very large area containing a moderate range of brown granular clays (Te-Kie Tutamoe Awapuku) under indigenous vegetation. The threatened or at-risk plants *Myosotis matthewsii*, Bartlett's hebe, maire tawake (*Syzygium maire*), ramarama (*Lophomyrtus bullata*), *Pittosporum ellipticum*, *Pittosporum kirkii*, *Pittosporum cornifolium*, *Olearia albida*, *Olearia angulata*, maire taiki (*Mida salicifolia*), koru (*Lobelia physaloides*), *Doodia mollis* and *Bulbophyllum tuberculatum* also occur here.

Continued on next page

- The coastal forest remnants at Otou and Hikurua, although relatively small, are highly important because there are so few sites of coastal forest left in *Te Korowai* and because of the geology on which they sit. The western (Hikurua) side of the Cape sits on serpentinised olivine and peridotite that is highly mineralised, while the eastern (Otou) side is on sheeted and layered gabbro.
- On the Otou side, the forest remnants are largely confined to the cliffs, scarps and gullies. These forests are dominated by pōhutukawa, karaka, houpara and the locally endemic ponga *Alsophila* aff. *tricolor* (a) (Te Paki). Above these, on the plateau, an ephemeral wetland occurs around North Cape trig. This is dominated by fountain sedge, *Schoenus brevifolius* and *Schoenus tendo*, along with waewaekākā in wetter areas. The gabbro is largely impervious to water, so a sticky clay wetland forms in the winter months, while in summer it can be very dry.
- On the Hikurua side, the coastal forest remnants also occur on the cliffs and gullies but are dominated by pōhutukawa, which occurs with locally endemic tanekaha (*Phyllocladus* aff. *trichomanoides* (Survive Cliffs)) and houpara (*Pseudopanax* aff. *lessonii* (Survive Cliffs)), *Geniostoma ligustrifolium* var. *crassum*, and scarce examples of kōhūhū tangihua. The shrublands on the cliffs and plateau on the Hikurua side also contain examples of some of these species, as well as *Phormium* aff. *tenax* (Survive Cliffs), kahikatoa, *Astelia banksii*, *Leucopogon xerampelinus*, *Cassinia amoena*, *Pomaderris edgerleyi* and *Pomaderris paniculosa* subsp. *novaezealandiae*, along with scarce examples of *Pittosporum pimeleoides* subsp. *majus*, *Parsonsia praeurtis*, *Coprosma spathulata* subsp. *hikuruana* and *Coprosma distantia*. The plateau can also be seasonally wet, but it is comprised of tropically weathered, dark red laterite soils that have formed on top of the serpentine.
- The duneland forests are the rarest forest type in *Te Korowai*, with only a few scattered groves of forest across the Aupōuri Peninsula consisting mainly of pōhutukawa and rawiri kākūka.

Additional values for Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki

- This Place has a unique geography in Te Hiku. It encompasses the southern extremities of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē, the mouths of Herekino and Whangapē Harbours, and several high, dissected plateaus that are dominated by kauri. The contrast of landscapes is dramatic, ranging from the huge golden dunes of Tauroa Point and the low windswept plateau of the Ahipara Gumfields through to the volcanic massifs of the Warawara and Herekino Forests with their escarpments, bluffs and waterfalls.
- Dunelands, along with small remnant wetlands, are significant because of the combination of plant and animal species present. Despite its very long human history, which reaches back to the earliest occupation of Aotearoa, this Place retains a high degree of naturalness. Historically, Lake Tangonge also supported several Threatened – Nationally Critical orchids that are now extinct in the region, including swamp helmet orchid (*Corybas carsei*), flying duck orchid (*Caleana minor*) and swamp greenhood orchid (*Pterostylis micromega*).

Continued on next page

- The Ahipara Plateau is a perched wetland, extending from the southern end of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē to the mouth of Herekino Harbour, and reflects a history of burning, logging and gum-digging. This area is particularly rich in archaeological sites, including pā, terraces and middens, which span the entire period of Māori settlement. The trenches, ditches, dams, sluices and gumholes provide rich evidence of the gum-digging history of this Place. Successions of low mānuka gumland, shrubland and small wetland areas cover the windswept plateau, while remnants of mixed coastal broadleaf-kauri forest linger in the gullies and valleys. This area is notable for its high number of threatened plants, diverse orchid communities, and variety of coastal and forest birds. Large, mobile and partly consolidated sand dunes have accumulated against the steep bluffs along the plateau edges and extend around the whole coastline, and extensive rocky reefs are a feature of Tauroa Point.

Issues

Native forest systems

- The native forest systems, and the rare and, in some cases, unique species they provide habitat for, are at risk from numerous threats, such as habitat loss, degradation from grazing and trampling, disturbance by vehicles, pest plant invasion, pathogen invasion, herbivory and predation, and land uses such as exotic forestry.
- Kauri disease presents a significant threat to the health of kauri forest and the habitat it provides for many species. It is present in several kauri stands within the area, such as the Raetea Forest.
- Maire tawake and ramarama are at risk of extinction from myrtle rust.
- Wild dogs, possums and other predators pose an increasing risk to ground-nesting birds such as brown kiwi, invertebrates and endemic skink populations.
- Threatened and at-risk flora, such as rātā Moehau, kōhūhū tangihua, *Pittosporum ellipticum*, *Pittosporum kirkii*, *Pittosporum cornifolium* and koru are at risk of extinction from introduced pest plants, as well as possums and other herbivores that feed on them.

Additional issues for Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki

- Ecosystems in this Place are affected by changes in the water cycle, drainage, pollution, sedimentation, nutrient enrichment, vegetation clearance, fire and invasion by pests. These effects have had significant consequences for biodiversity.
- Estuary and harbour ecosystems are threatened by activities within their catchments, such as land-use change, which can result in higher nutrient levels and sedimentation. Subdivision and the development of tracks for recreation can also lead to habitat loss and fragmentation, wildlife disturbance, increased pest plant encroachment, increased predation (e.g. from dogs and cats), and the disruption of wildlife movement.
- Off-road vehicle use in certain areas continues to affect indigenous flora and fauna, as well as hampering tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and community attempts to restore conservation areas.

Continued on next page

Opportunities	Native forest systems • Prevent the further establishment and spread of kauri disease to mitigate the damage to kauri trees and the habitat they provide. Many tracks in this Place are closed to limit the spread of the soil-borne pathogen that causes this disease. • Use management measures that protect kauri and allow closed tracks and routes to be reopened, where viable. Re-routing options are explored where closed tracks cannot viably be reopened. Wild animal control can also help reduce the spread of kauri disease. • Significantly reduce the number of predators within the mixed podocarp-hardwood forests to provide the opportunity for successful translocations of kōmako to the mainland. Additional opportunities for Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki • Build on the success of pest management in the Warawara Forest by trialling the use of new techniques and tools to combat pest plants and animals. • Phase out the use of vehicles in certain areas, especially in and around Tauroa Point where they are not being used for tikanga Māori or management purposes. • Build on the connections with natural areas and employment opportunities that Jobs for Nature has already created for the community in this Place to generate more conservation work and enhance wellbeing.
Policies	Native forest systems 8.3.2.1 In collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders, control invasive pest plants and the numbers of animal pests, including pigs, horses, cattle, possums and rodents, to levels that allow native species and habitats to recover in the forest systems. 8.3.2.2 Partner with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the community to successfully reintroduce kōmako to suitable ngahere. 8.3.2.3 Partner with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), conservation groups, Northland Fish & Game Council and hunting groups to raise awareness of the importance of avian awareness training for all dogs entering ngahere and reduce the number of dog attacks on kiwi. Additional policies for Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki 8.3.2.4 Advocate for responsible land-based rural activities that do not detrimentally affect the natural environments and ecosystems of Whangapē and Hokianga Harbours in collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), conservation stakeholders, Northland Fish & Game Council, Northland Regional Council and Far North District Council.

Continued on next page

- 8.3.2.5** Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), regional councils, territorial authorities, private landowners, Fish & Game New Zealand, statutory agencies, primary industries and other conservation stakeholders to:
- minimise sediment and nutrient inputs into waterways;
 - protect hydrological processes, including water levels;
 - exclude stock from waterways;
 - control pest plants and animals;
 - support an increase in site-based restoration activities within priority freshwater catchments and high-priority wetlands; and
 - encourage tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and community involvement in freshwater restoration initiatives.
- 8.3.2.6** Should allow vehicles within Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki, in accordance with the vehicle policies in Part Three.
- 8.3.2.7** Seek to increase the riparian planting of native species in priority areas on both Te Korowai lands and waters and private land by:
- working with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), private landowners, regional councils, territorial authorities and other conservation stakeholders;
 - supporting initiatives for riparian planting; and
 - advocating to relevant agencies to retire riparian areas from grazing.
- 8.3.2.8** Base the restoration of indigenous biodiversity in this Place on the principles for restoring:
- original and natural landscapes and, therefore, the mauri of the land; and
 - the relationships of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the community and conservation stakeholders with important sites and resources.

8.3.3 HISTORIC VALUES

- | | |
|--------|---|
| Values | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Archaeological sites are present throughout this Place due to successive generations of occupation and use. Many of these sites are on Te Korowai lands and waters. Two actively managed historic sites – the Tauroa Point dune middens and Kohukohu School – are on Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place (see Appendix 12, Volume II). Tauroa Point contains a series of middens and archaeological sites, as identified in a 2012 survey. There is a rich cultural history within this Place, including papakāinga, pā, food-gathering areas, and areas associated with travel, recreation and battles. |
|--------|---|

Continued on next page

Issues	• There are only a few identified cultural and historic sites on Te Korowai lands and waters within this Place, despite the cultural narrative and importance of the area. • Climate change, unauthorised access and inappropriate behaviour at archaeological sites and middens can cause damage. • There is minimal interpretation and little information available to understand the importance of certain areas within this Place.
Opportunities	• Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to carry out more formal monitoring of critical sites and record new exposures as they are identified. • Carry out an intensive site survey for Tauroa Point because the last survey was undertaken in 2012. • Support fencing efforts of local kaitiaki because four-wheel drive (4WD) vehicles have the greatest adverse effect in this Place.
Policies	8.3.3.1 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), private landowners, regional councils, territorial authorities and other conservation stakeholders to formally map the sites of significance with heritage values (on request). If they are formally mapped and adopted as actively managed historic sites, carry out formal monitoring of these critical sites and record new exposures when identified. 8.3.3.2 Work with and support tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to carry out an intensive archaeological site survey for Tauroa Point. 8.3.3.3 Work with and support tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to carry out fencing and vehicle access management at Tauroa Point to prevent unauthorised vehicle access. 8.3.3.4 Identify sites of cultural and historic importance on Te Korowai lands and waters within this Place by working with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) (at their request), Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and the public. 8.3.3.5 Support tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to develop wāhi tapu management plan(s) and promote the active management of wāhi tapu in this Place (where requested). 8.3.3.6 Improve the availability of information and sharing of knowledge about historic and cultural heritage on Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place, including partnering with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to tell ngā kōrero tuku iho. 8.3.3.7 Manage all landings on wāhi tapu sites and sites of cultural significance on Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place, in collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and in accordance with wāhi tapu plans (except in emergency situations).

Continued on next page

8.3.4 RECREATIONAL VALUES

Values	- The recreational focus in this Place reflects its two greatest assets: pristine, undeveloped coastal areas and dense, inland bush that is populated with a diversity of rare species. Backcountry tramping has been catered for, with opportunities for both independent and guided walking on the Herekino Forest Track, which is part of Te Araroa, a trail that spans the length of Aotearoa; the Kaitaia Walkway, which allows for a shorter walk; the Mangamuka Track; and the Warawara (Mitimiti to Pawarenga) Track, which provides a good backcountry challenge in the form of a 2-day tramp through the Warawara Forest. - This Place also caters for camping, with a basic campsite at Raetea that is popular with local families, picnickers and day visitors because of its sheltered nature and pristine stream. - Hunting is still allowed in this Place, but permits are needed and there are limited access opportunities available due to the closure of many tracks.
Issues	Many of the existing recreational opportunities in this Place have been suspended due to kauri disease and recent weather events. This presents challenges for providing appropriate activities for recreation and also puts pressure on recreational opportunities in other Places.
Opportunities	- The closure of many recreational activities in this area for various reasons provides a temporary respite for natural values to flourish, provided that active management is occurring in these areas. - Seek other opportunities for recreational activities outside Te Korowai lands and waters (e.g. on private lands and Treaty settlement lands).
Policies	8.3.4.1 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the community and conservation stakeholders to continue to actively manage biosecurity threats and risks, such as kauri disease. 8.3.4.2 In partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), landowners and other conservation stakeholders, actively consider re-routing options where tracks are closed due to the effects of kauri disease or climate change, such as storm damage or fires, and cannot be viably reopened. 8.3.4.3 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the community and conservation stakeholders to explore and investigate the potential recreational opportunities outside Te Korowai lands and waters that Te Papa Atawhai can support, consistent with Policy 10.3.2.1. 8.3.4.4 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the community, conservation stakeholders and NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi to understand the future state of access to the Mangamuka Gorge and whether this will continue to affect the tracks and connections through and across it. 8.3.4.5 Ensure that all unauthorised structures are removed from Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place.

9. Ngā tohutohu mō ia wahi

Combined milestones for each Place

Please note: These milestones should be read in conjunction with the region-wide milestones in section 10.5. All milestones are described in the past tense and written as if preceded by the words 'Te Papa Atawhai has'.

9.1 MILESTONES FOR NGĀ MOUTERE O, NGĀ MOUTERE KI

Natural values	9.1.1	Developed a plan for the ongoing protection and restoration of the threatened endemic pūtātara and kaikōmako Manawatāwhi populations on Manawatāwhi. (Year 3)
	9.1.2	Developed and started implementation of a public education programme on the importance of not landing on protected islands. (Year 2)
	9.1.3	Halved the number of estimated annual unauthorised landing incidents on protected islands from an established baseline average. (Year 7)
	9.1.4	Recorded no unauthorised landing incidents on protected islands. (Year 10)
	9.1.5	Ensured that the kōmako population on Manawatāwhi remains stable by minimising landings and ensuring that incursions and fires do not occur. (Years 1, 3, 5 and 10)
	9.1.6	Successfully controlled or eliminated plant and animal pest populations, as evidenced by records taken during pest-free island checks. (Years 1, 3, 5 and 10)
	9.1.7	Identified marine biodiversity values of Ngā Motu O, Ngā Motu Ki, which are being recognised in the decision making of Te Papa Atawhai. (Year 1)
	9.1.8	Protected marine biodiversity values of Ngā Motu O, Ngā Motu Ki in the decision making of Te Papa Atawhai. (Year 5)
Historic values	9.1.9	In partnership with Te Hiku iwi, identified all wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga. (Year 1)
	9.1.10	In partnership with Te Hiku iwi, introduced measures to protect wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga in line with wāhi tapu plans. (Year 5)
	9.1.11	In partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), developed and shared knowledge that tells ngā kōrero tuku iho of Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki at sites with views to the relevant islands. (Year 5)

Continued on next page

Section 9 table continued

Recreational values	9.1.12	Increased recreational users' awareness of and compliance with access restrictions. (Year 2)
9.2 MILESTONES FOR NGĀ ONEPŪ O, NGĀ ONEPŪ KI		
Natural values	9.2.1	Partnered with relevant tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to protect and enhance populations of nationally threatened and at-risk species that are endemic to Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki. (Year 1)
	9.2.2	Contributed to a multi-agency plan for the management of wild horses, ungulates, dogs and other wild animals. (Year 2)
	9.2.3	Contributed to the enhancement of water quality in the coastal environment by working with conservation stakeholders and landowners to change land management practices. (Years 1, 5 and 10)
	9.2.4	Partnered with relevant tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to actively recount their kōrero tuku iho along Te Ara Wairua ki Te Rerenga Wairua, Tanutanu, Ngā Tai o Tokerau. (Year 4)
Historic values	9.2.5	Partnered with relevant tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to increase the number of: a) sites identified as being of cultural and historic importance (Years 2, 5 and 10); and b) actively conserved historic sites. (Year 4)
	9.2.6	In partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), created wāhi tapu plans. (Year 4)
Recreational values	9.2.7	In partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and supported by other relevant agencies and stakeholders, created a plan identifying recreational opportunities. (Year 5)
	9.2.8	In partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), implemented a plan identifying recreational opportunities. (Years 5 and 10)

Continued on next page

9.3 MILESTONES FOR NGĀ WAI O, NGĀ WAI KI		
Natural values	9.3.1	Supported an integrated plan to restore and maintain the ecological health of Hokianga, Rangaunu, Houhora, Pārengarenga and Whangapē Harbours in partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), Northland Regional Council and the community. (Years 1, 4, 7 and 10)
	9.3.2	Undertaken ecological assessments of Ngā Repo O, Ngā Repo Ki on Te Korowai lands and waters (including Motutangi Swamp, Waihuahua Swamp and Kaimaumau Wetlands). (Year 10)
	9.3.3	Supported the regeneration of priority ecosystem units in Ngā Repo O, Ngā Repo Ki (the Motutangi Swamp, Waihuahua Swamp and Kaimaumau Wetlands). (Years 1, 4, 7 and 10)
	9.3.4	Supported tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in developing their customary materials plans for Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki me Ngā Repo O, Ngā Repo Ki. (Year 3)
Historic values	9.3.5	Worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to identify and assess sites of cultural and historic significance within Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki on Te Korowai lands and waters. (Year 3)
	9.3.6	Supported tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in developing their wāhi tapu plans. (Year 3)
Recreational values	9.3.7	Worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to identify opportunities to increase visitor awareness and understanding of Māori customs, protocols, beliefs and values as they relate to waterbodies. (Year 3)
9.4 MILESTONES FOR NGĀ NGAHERE O, NGĀ NGAHERE KI		
Natural values	9.4.1	Worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), conservation partners and the community to monitor and manage closed recreational facilities in this Place for potential kauri disease protection upgrades. (Years 1, 4, 7 and 10)
	9.4.2	Contributed to landscape-scale pest control in the Warawawa, Herekino, Raetea and Maungataniwha Forests. (Year 1, 5 and 10)
	9.4.3	Contributed to resourcing the efforts of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the community to protect and enhance populations of nationally threatened species and taonga species. (Years 5 and 10)
	9.4.4	Investigated and resourced a project (or projects) in partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the community, which has assisted in bringing back kōmako to ngahere. (Years 5 and 10)

Continued on next page

Section 9 table continued

Historic values	9.4.5	Supported protection efforts (e.g. fencing) and 4WD management at Tauroa Point in partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi). (Years 1, 4, 7 and 10)
	9.4.6	Partnered with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to actively tell ngā kōrero tuku iho at Tauroa Point. (Year 4)
	9.4.7	Assisted tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in developing their wāhi tapu plans for the ngahere. (Year 3)
Recreational values	9.4.8	Investigated opportunities to open up closed tracks and routes and alternative routes presented by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation partners. (Years 1, 4, 7 and 10)
	9.4.9	Removed unauthorised structures from Te Korowai lands and waters in this Place. (Year 1)



Pūpū whakarongotaua (*Placostylus ambagiosus*), Te Paki. Photo: Department of Conservation



WAHANGA TUATORU

He tirohanga whānui ā-rohe

PART THREE

Regional overview

10. Ngā whāinga, ngā kaupapa here me ngā tohutohu ā-motu, ā-rohe

National and regional objectives, policies and milestones

The intermediate outcomes for Te Papa Atawhai are reflected in the sections below, as are the national objectives and policies, which provide for integrated conservation management across Aotearoa.

The regional policies address the issues and opportunities across *Te Korowai* and enable local issues, aspirations and values to be documented. The regional perspective is important and provides a balance between integrated management across the country, while also realising the diversity of natural resources, people and areas.

The regional milestones, or the things that Te Papa Atawhai will do within the 10-year timeframe of Te Hiku CMS, are outlined below.

The national and regional policy requirements in this section give more detailed policy information for specific activities across the whole region.

10.1 Ngā uara taiao

Natural values

Te taiao is a local laboratory, library, pharmacy and school, and enhanced access to Te Korowai lands and waters is likely to result in enhanced wellbeing.

Natural values in *Te Korowai* are influenced by the wide range of geological and landscape features that are present – for example, the jagged and steep volcanic mountain ranges found in Te Paki through to Otou, where a section of the continental crust and sea floor has been folded and uplifted. These and other significant geological features are listed in Appendix 9 in Volume II.

These geological and landscape features influence the habitats and ecosystem types in *Te Korowai*. Many important ecosystems and habitats are present

within this region, as outlined in Appendix 3 in Volume II. Some areas, such as Otou, are recognised nationally as supporting a diverse range of threatened and at-risk species, including kōhūhū tangihua, *Rhabdothamnus* aff. *solandri* (a) (Survive Cliffs) (both Threatened – Nationally Critical), and *Pittosporum pimeleoides* subsp. *majus*, *Parsonsia praeurtis* and *Pomaderris paniculosa* subsp. *novaezealandiae* (all Threatened – Nationally Endangered).

Careful consideration needs to be given to the protection, preservation and enhancement of the wide range of natural values in this area and the factors that affect them. Many habitats and ecosystems are in serious decline due to influences like habitat loss, fragmentation, land-use change, pest species, wild animals, biosecurity risks from diseases such as kauri disease and myrtle rust, and climate change. Fire and Emergency New Zealand (FENZ) is responsible for managing fires nationally, under the Fire and Emergency New Zealand Act 2017,³⁷ and Te Papa Atawhai works with and supports FENZ to minimise and mitigate the threat of fires on Te Korowai lands and waters. This aspect is particularly important in Te Hiku because fires often ravage important sites and landscapes. The threats, pests and wild animals present in *Te Korowai* are listed in Appendix 6 in Volume II.

Priority ecosystem units have been established and help to focus Te Papa Atawhai efforts by identifying the sites where conservation work will most effectively contribute to protecting the full range of ecosystems and the nationally threatened and at-risk species identified within them. A list of these units is provided in Appendix 5 in Volume II.

From a marine perspective, there are huge gaps in our knowledge, despite the known importance and values associated with offshore islands such as Manawatāwhi, Motu o Pao and the Simmonds Islands. The known

³⁷ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2017/0017/latest/DLM6712701.html

marine habitats and ecosystems within *Te Korowai* are listed in Appendix 8 in Volume II, but ongoing research and partnerships are needed to fully understand the conservation issues on these islands.

A range of conservation programmes and projects has been established in *Te Korowai*, and continued support for these programmes is required to build the capacity and capability of people and ensure the ongoing contribution to natural values.

Te Papa Atawhai is committed to working with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) on collaborative projects that benefit the whole community by improving shared learning and the integration of Māori values and knowledge. These projects were started as a result of the Jobs for Nature programme and the funding that was given to many iwi and hapū groups. The application of mātauranga is a valuable contribution of knowledge and skills, not only to tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) but also to the wider community, and this world view and approach is specifically supported through Te Hiku CMS.



SA2 possum trap, Warawara Forest. Photo: Kylie McDowell

Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here mō ngā taiao

Objectives and policies for natural values

10.1.1 OBJECTIVES	10.1.2 POLICIES
10.1.1.1 The diversity of the natural values of Aotearoa is maintained and restored, with priority given to: a) conserving a full range of the ecosystems in Aotearoa to a healthy functioning state, with an emphasis on the priority ecosystems listed in Appendices 5 and 8 in Volume II; b) conserving threatened species to ensure their persistence, with an emphasis on the threatened and at-risk species of flora and fauna listed in Appendix 7 in Volume II; c) supporting the work of others to maintain and restore locally treasured natural values, including a selection of the ecosystem types and species listed in Appendices 5 and 7 in Volume II; d) conserving significant geological features, landforms and landscapes, including those identified in Appendix 9 in Volume II; and e) adapting to and mitigating the effects of climate change.	National 10.1.2.1 Advocate for the protection of natural values that are at risk of permanent degradation, such as the important ecosystems and habitats, priority ecosystem units, and threatened species identified in Appendices 3, 5 and 7, and the significant geological features, landforms and landscapes identified in Appendix 9 in Volume II. 10.1.2.2 Contain or control the pest plants and animals and wild animals identified in Appendix 6 in Volume II through a targeted strategic and sustainable multi-threat management approach. 10.1.2.3 Encourage coordinated action to control pest plants and animals and wild animals through working with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders. 10.1.2.4 Support relevant agencies in the implementation of pest management plans (subject to any good neighbour rules) and pathway management plans. 10.1.2.5 Work cooperatively with FENZ to: a) increase awareness of, assess and, where necessary, reduce vegetation fire risks relating to land in Te Hiku where Te Papa Atawhai has fire reduction, response or other obligations as set out in the Department of Conservation and Fire and Emergency Operational Services Agreement, including those resulting from Treaty settlement legislation, Te Korowai lands and waters, and Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata; b) provide information to visitors about how to mitigate fire risks and identify escape routes or safe areas if a fire occurs; and c) restrict or prohibit the lighting of fires in open air on peatlands or wetlands other than for management purposes.

Continued on next page

10.1.1 OBJECTIVES	10.1.2 POLICIES
	10.1.2.6 Prioritise statutory advocacy to: a) safeguard, preserve and protect coastal habitats, including through the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (2010) and regional coastal plan processes; and b) conserve marine species and significant marine habitats and ecosystems. 10.1.2.7 Continue to grow and develop the marine mammal stranding response of Te Papa Atawhai by: a) implementing iwi whale-stranding protocols to increase active involvement by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi); b) supporting the involvement of scientific researchers and other interested parties when strandings occur; and c) promoting cultural practices, including access to cultural materials. 10.1.2.8 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to increase the protection and enhancement of coastal and inland dune habitats, estuaries and harbours from the adverse effects of development, the spread of pest plants and animals, vehicle use, and stock incursions by: a) actively managing Te Korowai lands and waters; b) supporting the work of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders; and c) raising public awareness of the vulnerability of these habitats.
Te Korowai	
	10.1.2.9 Undertake effective pest plant and animal control (as measured by the retention or enhancement of indigenous flora and fauna) in all areas of vegetation that are regionally, culturally and/or spiritually significant, including those habitats occupied by taonga or threatened species. 10.1.2.10 Monitor appropriately the effectiveness of pest management, control and eradication operations in protecting priority ecosystems, increasing the extent and abundance of taonga species, and achieving improvements in the ecological health of terrestrial indigenous habitats, rivers, lakes, wetlands and coastal areas.

Continued on next page

10.1.1 OBJECTIVES	10.1.2 POLICIES
	10.1.2.11 Establish new, and expand existing, active collaborations with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders in landscape-scale predator control.
	10.1.2.12 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the community and other conservation stakeholders to: a) prioritise the protection and management of threats to the threatened and at-risk species identified in Appendix 7 in Volume II; b) monitor ecosystems and their indigenous species to inform how they are maintained and restored, including identifying opportunities for input by citizen science; and c) undertake pest control.
	10.1.2.13 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the community and research concessionaires to provide educational opportunities that foster appreciation and generate interest in conserving natural heritage values in <i>Te Korowai</i>.
	10.1.2.14 Work collaboratively with conservation stakeholders and other agencies to develop and implement biosecurity strategies that prevent incursions of species, including the pathogen that causes kauri disease and myrtle rust fungus, and marine invasive species, such as those listed in Appendix 6 in Volume II.
	10.1.2.15 Continue to collaborate with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and Northland Regional Council to deliver better protection of the indigenous ecosystems and species in <i>Te Korowai</i> in an efficient way by conducting interagency projects to achieve integrated conservation management across management jurisdictions.
	10.1.2.16 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), Northland Regional Council and conservation stakeholders to protect and improve the state of biodiversity at identified shared regional ecological priority sites, such as those outlined in Appendix 5 in Volume II.
	10.1.2.17 Develop and implement mutually agreed processes with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) for identifying indigenous taonga species and developing opportunities for recovery programmes for these species.

Continued on next page

10.1.1 OBJECTIVES	10.1.2 POLICIES
	10.1.2.18 Support tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) on projects that connect access to Te Korowai lands and waters and enhance biodiversity, water quality and ecological functioning within their rohe. 10.1.2.19 Actively collaborate with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to give effect to the Korowai for Enhanced Conservation Relationship Agreement. 10.1.2.20 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to develop customary materials plans that are consistent with Treaty settlement legislation. 10.1.2.21 Undertake research in partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the community and conservation stakeholders to better understand the species within marine environments and ecosystems and whether further intervention is required. 10.1.2.22 Continue to grow and develop Te Papa Atawhai, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders' natural hazard and fire responses by: a) continuing to increase active involvement by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders; and b) supporting the involvement of the community and FENZ. 10.1.2.23 Prioritise increasing the health of ecosystems on Te Korowai lands and waters to enable tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to sustainably gather customary resources. Apply this policy in conjunction with Policy 4.2.2.3 for setting shared conservation goals. 10.1.2.24 Continue to advocate for land-use management that does not adversely affect natural environments and ecosystems, in collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and other conservation stakeholders. 10.1.2.25 Ensure that collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders is undertaken when considering all available options to establish the most suitable and effective pest animal control methods for Te Korowai lands and waters. The aim of any pest animal control operation is to maximise successful outcomes for

Continued on next page

10.1.1 OBJECTIVES	10.1.2 POLICIES
	ecosystems, threatened and recovering species, and people, including by using the following criteria: a) Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders are involved in setting priorities and designing the operations, including monitoring. b) Consideration is given to the best options to use around wāhi tapu and places of cultural importance, including mahinga kai sites and resources, puna, and urupā. c) The timing and design reflect local conditions. d) Whether different methods can be used together. e) Potential non-target effects are clearly identified, including for those values identified by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), and are assessed transparently using available evidence.
	10.1.2.26 Actively recognise and provide for the relationship between tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and indigenous biodiversity and ecosystems, and recognise the interest of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in biodiversity protection, management and restoration, including: a) the importance of indigenous biodiversity, particularly with regard to mahinga kai, taonga species, customary use and valuable ecosystem services; b) the special features of indigenous biodiversity that have significant cultural heritage; c) the connection between the protection and restoration of indigenous biodiversity and cultural wellbeing; d) the role of mātauranga held collectively in biodiversity management; and e) the role of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in projects to restore indigenous biodiversity.
	10.1.2.27 Advocate for the establishment of biodiversity corridors in <i>Te Korowai</i>, ki uta ki tai, as a means of connecting areas and sites of high indigenous biodiversity value. These may be located both inside and outside Te Korowai lands and waters.
	10.1.2.28 Recognise and support private landowners and conservation groups that are undertaking pest control efforts.

10.2 Ngā uara o mua Historic values

Te Korowai has a rich Māori heritage spanning over 1,000 years, and a variety of heritage stories exist from early Māori settlement through to the arrival of Europeans. For Māori, the coastal landscape of this area provided an important source of kai moana and travel for trading, which has resulted in more than 25% of the archaeological sites in Aotearoa that are associated with Māori occupation being found here.

To date, Te Papa Atawhai has predominantly focused on European settlement when considering the heritage values of this area. Te Papa Atawhai acknowledges the need to work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to rectify this and, through Treaty settlement, there are measures that will appropriately provide for the integration of Māori stories about people and sites and the active management of the wāhi tapu on Te Korowai lands and waters. The current list of actively managed historic sites on Te Korowai lands and waters is provided in Appendix 12 in Volume II.

Given the many underlying facets of history and tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) within *Te Korowai*, there is a need to appreciate the many different stories that should be told. There are opportunities to create additional experiences for manuhiri to better articulate the unique history of the area. Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) are integral to identifying where it is appropriate to tell their stories and where existing interpretation needs to be improved. Through Treaty settlement, a range of sites of significance and wāhi tapu are known, and active management of these areas may be a focal point for tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi).

Te Papa Atawhai also manages many other lesser-known historic sites that are highly valued by local communities. However, it is not possible for Te Papa Atawhai to manage all recorded archaeological and historic sites located within *Te Korowai* due to the sheer number of them. Therefore, the relationships between Te Papa Atawhai and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), the public, and other parties who are interested in the restoration and maintenance of historic sites in the region are important in terms of the management of these areas.

Under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014,³⁸ it is an offence to destroy or modify an archaeological site without first obtaining an archaeological authority. Te Papa Atawhai works with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to ensure compliance with these requirements.



Te Rerenga Wairua / Cape Reinga. Photo: Peter Rein-Hodurek

³⁸ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2014/0026/latest/DLM4005414.html

Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here mō ngā uara o mua

Objectives and policies for historic values

10.2.1 OBJECTIVES	10.2.2 POLICIES
10.2.1.1 The history of Aotearoa is brought to life, protected and conserved for future generations.	National 10.2.2.1 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and conservation stakeholders to: a) identify the locations, values, significance and conditions of historic sites and wāhi tapu within Te Korowai lands and waters; b) ensure that records of the locations, values, significance and conditions of these sites are kept up to date; and c) consult and share relevant information before any significant earthworks or development occurs that could affect the value, significance or condition of a historic site or wāhi tapu within <i>Te Korowai</i>. 10.2.2.2 Add new sites or remove sites from the managed historic sites listed in Appendix 12 in Volume II, based on their: a) historic, cultural and physical significance; b) value to tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders; and c) conservation requirements. 10.2.2.3 Profile historic sites of significance and a selection of the managed sites listed in Appendix 12 in Volume II through quality interpretation, both on and off site, to enable visitors to identify with the sites and their stories. 10.2.2.4 Collaborate with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders regarding the conservation and management of historic sites within <i>Te Korowai</i> .

Continued on next page

10.2.1 OBJECTIVES	10.2.2 POLICIES
	10.2.2.5 In partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and other heritage stakeholders, undertake conservation work (repair and maintenance) at managed historic sites listed in Appendix 12 in Volume II, having regard to any heritage assessments and conservation plans, national and international best practices, and the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) New Zealand Charter.³⁹
	<i>Te Korowai</i>
	10.2.2.6 Must work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to develop a wāhi tapu management framework and wāhi tapu management plan(s), and support the implementation of these if and when requested.
	10.2.2.7 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and others to utilise expertise and shared interests to: a) conserve and protect the historic sites and wāhi tapu within <i>Te Korowai</i>; b) tell the stories of the historic sites and wāhi tapu within <i>Te Korowai</i>; and c) integrate and enhance visitor experiences where heritage values will not be compromised, including investigating the potential for Tohu Whenua sites within <i>Te Korowai</i>.
	10.2.2.8 Work with local and regional authorities to support the identification and protection of historic heritage and wāhi tapu outside Te Korowai lands and waters.
	10.2.2.9 Support and work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to improve capability and capacity to effectively manage historic sites.
	10.2.2.10 Ensure that decision-making processes consider the wāhi tapu framework and wāhi tapu management plan(s) where available. Where these are not available, engage with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to confirm whether such heritage values exist and whether the proposal will adversely affect these values.

Continued on next page

³⁹ [icomos.org.nz/charter](https://www.icomos.org.nz/charter)

10.2.1 OBJECTIVES	10.2.2 POLICIES
	10.2.2.11 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to co-design story telling across <i>Te Korowai</i> to ensure that both European and Māori historical narratives are captured and that stories of people's connections with areas are told. 10.2.2.12 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and other agencies, such as local and regional councils and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, to identify sites that are at risk of imminent loss due to effects such as climate change, and identify priority sites for protection and preservation. 10.2.2.13 Should collaborate with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) before assessing concessions relating to the use of information reflecting Māori heritage values, regarding the appropriateness, accuracy and sensitivity of the proposal. 10.2.2.14 Require that mātauranga Māori, including oral traditions and histories, are considered equally alongside documented evidence when determining the nature, extent or significance of wāhi tapu or sites of cultural importance on Te Korowai lands and waters that are associated with a particular area.

10.3 Ngā uara papa rehia

Recreational values

Te Korowai supports a range of recreational activities that are shaped by its coastline, native forests, unique biodiversity and rich cultural heritage. It is acknowledged that activities that are considered recreation by one person may not be by another, new recreational activities are likely to emerge over the life of *Te Hiku CMS* and recreational preferences may change. The *Te Papa Atawhai* website⁴⁰ will identify the range of recreational opportunities available at any time.

Recreation has both positive and negative impacts on *te taiao*, communities, society, culture and the economy. *Te Hiku CMS* seeks to provide for recreational activities that are sustainable and to maintain or enhance *Te Korowai* lands and waters for future generations. Achieving this may require people who use these lands and waters to change how they recreate or for areas and tracks to be closed temporarily or permanently, acknowledging that such actions may reduce available recreational opportunities.

This section of *Te Hiku CMS* directs how recreation will be managed throughout *Te Korowai* and where recreational opportunities involve one or more Places or where new opportunities may be considered. Part Two – Places describes the values, opportunities and management direction for recreation in relation to specific areas, and section 11 outlines the conditions to be applied to specific activities.

There is capacity for visitor growth in *Te Korowai*, and several opportunities exist to enhance the connectivity between locations, which will improve the length of stay within the region. These include improvements to *Te Araroa* and private or *tangata whenua* (*whānau*, *hapū*, *iwi*) based opportunities. However, increasing the numbers of visitors and concessions needs to be carefully managed against ecological, cultural and spiritual considerations.

The effects of climate change, specifically the increased risk of fire, coastal hazards and water security, particularly at visitor facilities, also need to be

considered to ensure that these facilities and recreational opportunities remain resilient into the future.

Working with and supporting *tangata whenua* (*whānau*, *hapū*, *iwi*) to identify and plan recreational opportunities is crucial to achieving a balance between enhanced recreation and the preservation of *taonga*.

Te Papa Atawhai also needs to work with *tangata whenua* (*whānau*, *hapū*, *iwi*), local communities, conservation stakeholders and statutory agencies to monitor the effects of recreational use, understand visitor needs and preferences, and identify, develop and maintain recreational opportunities.

Te Papa Atawhai uses a combination of approaches to manage recreation and activities on *Te Korowai* lands and waters, including visitor management zones and management prescriptions (see Appendix 11, Volume II), which are defined as follows:

Visitor management zones	Are used to help identify and plan for a range of recreational opportunities. The zone characteristics (prescriptions) guide <i>Te Papa Atawhai</i> in its decision making, including the provision of facilities and the assessment of concession application opportunities.
Management prescriptions	Are used to increase recreational use on <i>Te Korowai</i> lands and waters. This is a holistic approach that considers the marketing and contribution of <i>tangata whenua</i> (<i>whānau</i> , <i>hapū</i> , <i>iwi</i>), communities and businesses to the visitor experience. The focus is on the predominant visitor groups accessing different destinations.

⁴⁰ doc.govt.nz

Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here mo ngā uara papa rehia

Objectives and policies for recreational values

10.3.1 OBJECTIVES	10.3.2 POLICIES
10.3.1.1 The outdoor experiences of New Zealanders and visitors are enriched, with an emphasis on: a) supporting a range of sustainable recreational experiences that encourage people to enjoy the outdoors; and b) supporting people to take care of and take action to preserve our special places.	National 10.3.2.1 Identify, provide and maintain a range of outdoor recreation opportunities within Te Korowai lands and waters where: a) they are consistent with the: (i) protection of natural, historic and cultural values; (ii) purposes for which the lands and waters concerned are held; (iii) outcomes and policies for the relevant Place; (iv) visitor management zones identified in Appendix 11 in Volume III; and (v) biosecurity threats and considerations; b) demand is evident and expected to be maintained; and c) the effects of climate change have been considered. 10.3.2.2 Contribute to a national network of visitor opportunities by promoting the ‘Icon destinations’ identified in Appendix 10 in Volume II as strategic attractions within the network of opportunities offered in <i>Te Korowai</i>. 10.3.2.3 Contribute to a national network of visitor opportunities by promoting ‘Local treasures’ (see Appendix 10, Volume II) as locally important locations and more challenging attractions within the network of opportunities offered in <i>Te Korowai</i>. 10.3.2.4 Work with Toitū Te Whenua Land Information New Zealand (LINZ), Outdoor Access Commission Herenga ā Nuku Aotearoa, regional councils, territorial authorities, Northland Fish & Game Council, other agencies and landowners to: a) progressively enhance connectivity and public access to and between Te Korowai lands and waters and other public open spaces, road and rail corridors, and regional and local trail networks; and b) achieve improved access to Te Korowai lands and waters for recreation and enhanced public access to the coastal margin, lakes and rivers.

Continued on next page

10.3.1 OBJECTIVES	10.3.2 POLICIES
	<i>Te Korowai</i>
	10.3.2.5 Should work with appropriate tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to provide information to visitors and the community explaining the whakapapa and cultural heritage of the natural environment they are visiting.
	10.3.2.6 Work with Te Araroa Trust and tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to develop Te Araroa trail experiences, including the provision of visitor facilities, and share information in <i>Te Korowai</i> , consistent with Policy 10.3.2.1.
	10.3.2.7 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), Outdoor Access Commission Herenga ā Nuku Aotearoa, Northland Regional Council, Far North District Council, Northland Fish & Game Council and other conservation stakeholders to: a) monitor the effects of recreational use on natural, historic and cultural values, and tracks and other facilities; b) understand the needs and preferences of visitors; and c) understand the contribution that recreational opportunities within <i>Te Korowai</i> are making to the region.
	10.3.2.8 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders to identify and develop new recreational opportunities on Te Korowai lands and waters, consistent with Policy 10.3.2.1.
	10.3.2.9 Promote kaitiaki values to visitors to <i>Te Korowai</i> through education, information and advocacy, including joint initiatives with other stakeholders to manage pressures at high-use sites.



Te Werahi Beach Track, Te Rerenga Wairua.
Photo: Department of Conservation

10.4 Te huringa ahuarangi

Climate change

There is no longer any doubt that the natural environment is changing. Climate change is one of the greatest challenges Aotearoa and *Te Korowai* will face, posing a threat to the country's culture, natural environment and economy.

Numerous tohu of climate change can be seen. More intense rainfall and storm events, representative of the tears of Ranginui, are seen as a sign of aroha for Papatūānuku and an attempt to not only cool her down but flush her of impurities.

Our natural environment that sustains us with kai, water and clean air, and provides us with taonga species that make up our unique indigenous biodiversity will come under increasing pressure. Sacred coastal sites may become damaged or lost, and recreational areas may change or become unusable. Places that were once visited for their prestige, mana and beauty may also disappear over time. These threats, brought about by climate change, force us to recognise the effect people are having on the environment, as well as the effect the changing environment is having on people, in turn.

We understand that the effects of climate change in *Te Korowai* include increased annual average temperatures and an increase in drought frequency, duration and intensity, with up to 10% less spring rainfall. These droughts are also likely to result in increased fire risk, which is a concerning issue given the large expanses of ngahere and peat wetlands within the rohe.

More intense storms and rainfall events will be coupled with rising sea levels and effects on the coasts and waterways. Existing pests and potential new pests, especially plant, insect and marine pests, may also spread, allowing them to gain a foothold in *Te Korowai*.

Protection of te taiao and a more stable climate cannot be achieved without a combined community effort, with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) at the forefront of climate action and solutions. Communities in *Te Korowai* have been kaitiaki for generations, with rights over wāhi tapu and the natural environments

and landscapes. Tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) involvement and leadership are required to challenge the confronting issue of climate change.

We recognise that an integrated approach, ki uta ki tai, is required on *Te Korowai* lands and waters, and propose to start these efforts immediately to ensure that future generations are left with a healthy and stable environment. Mitigation and adaptation methods are needed to ensure that we plan for a changing climate.

Adaptation means anticipating the adverse effects of climate change and taking appropriate action to prevent or minimise the damage they can cause, or taking advantage of opportunities that may arise. This includes the protection of our taonga species, places and people.

For *Te Hiku CMS*, protection in this context is wide ranging based on the inherited values of kaitiakitanga, pūkengatanga and mana, and is not limited to the physical protection of a site. An example of this protection is working together with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to identify wāhi tapu sites at risk of being lost due to climate change, understanding each site's history and values, and then deciding on the best methods to use to preserve those values for future generations.

Mitigation means making the effects of climate change less severe by preventing or reducing the emission of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere.

This approach ensures that we can relieve pressure on certain species and sites, outlines what we can do to prepare and change the way we are doing things, and highlights the things we can do to limit climate change effects.

Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here mō ngā huringa ahuarangi

Objectives and policies for climate change

10.4.1 OBJECTIVES	10.4.2 POLICIES
10.4.1.1 The effects of climate change in <i>Te Korowai</i> are considered through both a te ao Māori / mātauranga Māori and Western science lens to promote adaptation and mitigation measures to increase the resilience of our cultural, natural, historic and recreational values.	10.4.2.1 Increase the resilience of taonga species, places and people to climate change on Te Korowai lands and waters by: a) protecting, where possible, the natural values of the region and specific priority areas as outlined in Policies 10.1.2.1–10.1.2.8; b) collaborating with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and other agencies to identify sites that are at risk of imminent loss and identifying priority sites for preservation, as outlined in Policy 10.2.2.12; c) identifying outdoor recreational opportunities on Te Korowai lands and waters in accordance with Policy 10.3.2.1 that are compatible with the predicted effects of climate change; and d) collaborating with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to take into consideration te ao Māori and mātauranga Māori, and the specific relationship requirements in the Te Hiku Treaty settlements.
	10.4.2.2 Mitigate and adapt to the effects of climate change by: a) requiring applicants for authorisations to: (i) assess the effects of climate change on, and the estimated carbon emissions of, their proposed activity; and (ii) identify how they will mitigate or adapt to the above to reduce overall effects; b) enabling regular opportunities, as part of Te Papa Atawhai monitoring, for tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the community to share feedback, monitoring data and anecdotal evidence of climate change effects and, where possible, supplement this with further research to understand localised effects;

Continued on next page

10.4.1 OBJECTIVES	10.4.2 POLICIES
	c) advocating for priority to be given to adaptation measures, then mitigation measures, including offsets, such as native tree planting, to support region-wide climate change initiatives and goals; this could include collaboration with FENZ, local councils, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and community groups; and d) reducing overall carbon emissions from Te Papa Atawhai operations, while ensuring that Te Hiku CMS values are protected.
	10.4.2.3 Improve the resilience of conservation resources within <i>Te Korowai</i> to climate change-related effects through adaptive planning and actions based on mātauranga Māori and the best scientific information available.



Kapowairua beach. Photo: Benhi Doxon

10.5 Ngā tohutohu ā-rohe

Regional milestones

The milestones below give effect to the objectives and policies in Part Three. Milestones that relate to all priorities are listed first, and the regional milestones need to be read in conjunction with the more specific milestones for Places set out in Part Two.

CATEGORY	MILESTONES
Te Tiriti o Waitangi relationships	Relationships with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) 10.5.1 Co-designed a strategic process to implement Treaty principles and the Korowai for Enhanced Conservation Relationship Agreement for Te Papa Atawhai. This strategic approach should specifically identify the opportunities for shared capability and capacity, enhancing opportunities between tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and Te Papa Atawhai. (Year 1) 10.5.2 Worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to meet all commitments to true engagement and co-governance with Te Hiku iwi on conservation matters, as outlined in the Te Hiku Treaty settlement legislation. (Years 1, 5 and 10) 10.5.3 Assisted tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to develop a decision-making schedule in accordance with Te Hiku Treaty settlement legislation and created a process for implementing the schedule. (Year 3) 10.5.4 Updated all public and internal-facing information sources (e.g. websites and brochures) to remove references to cultural redress land as Te Korowai lands and waters. (Year 1) 10.5.5 Annually reviewed and monitored the Relationship Agreements. (Year 1) 10.5.6 Put in place measures to protect, encourage respect for and provide for active involvement of Te Hiku iwi in the management of sites and species of significance to Te Hiku iwi. (Year 3) Cultural materials plan 10.5.7 Supported and worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) (as requested) to develop a cultural materials plan for customary practices and the use of traditional materials and indigenous species on Te Korowai lands and waters. (Year 5) Wāhi tapu plan 10.5.8 Supported and worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) (as requested) to develop a wāhi tapu framework and management plan(s) on Te Korowai lands and waters. (Year 5)

Continued on next page

CATEGORY	MILESTONES
	10.5.9 Supported and worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) (as requested) to undertake further heritage assessments in relation to areas where significant historic heritage is located, within the areas subject to a wāhi tapu management plan. (Year 10) Strategic projects 10.5.10 Identified and prioritised the projects of significance to tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) on Te Korowai lands and waters and cultural redress land (where it is adjoining and requested by tangata whenua [whānau, hapū, iwi]). (Year 3) 10.5.11 Implemented at least one project of significance for each Te Hiku iwi from those identified in Milestone 10.5.10. (Year 5) 10.5.12 Adapted the operation and business planning functions of the Kaitia District Office by setting up specific teams to respond to the unique needs of each Place. (Year 1) 10.5.13 Developed one or more interpretation plans with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) that identify areas where further cultural narratives and stories within <i>Te Korowai</i> area should be shared with visitors. (Year 3) 10.5.14 Supported tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to develop cultural narratives and stories, and to implement interpretation plans for at least one site within Te Korowai lands and waters for each Te Hiku iwi. (Year 3)
Climate change	Climate change mitigation 10.5.15 Identified the scope of carbon emissions related to Te Korowai lands and waters. (Year 1) 10.5.16 Undertaken an assessment of carbon emissions for Te Korowai lands and waters and established a baseline. (Year 3) 10.5.17 Established carbon emission reduction targets for the next 10 years. (Year 5) Climate change adaptation 10.5.18 Worked with other agencies and tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to undertake a desktop assessment of the vulnerability of historic sites to climate change effects within <i>Te Korowai</i>. (Year 3) 10.5.19 Worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and other agencies to prioritise and ground truth the sites identified in Milestone 10.5.18 as being vulnerable to climate change. (Year 5) 10.5.20 Developed and implemented an operational plan for managing the prioritised sites identified in Milestone 10.5.19 that will potentially be affected by climate change. (Year 7)

Continued on next page

CATEGORY	MILESTONES
Natural values	Ecosystems 10.5.21 Undertaken work in the priority ecosystem units listed in Appendix 5 in Volume II, which has maintained or improved the ecological functioning of these units. (Year 10) Community involvement and partnership 10.5.22 Identified opportunities for citizen science input into monitoring and educational opportunities. (Year 3) Taonga species 10.5.23 Developed mutually agreed processes for identifying taonga species and included these as criteria for identifying priority ecosystem units. (Year 3) Capacity building and education 10.5.24 Worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and education providers to develop a process that identifies opportunities for research concessionaires to provide educational opportunities to schools within <i>Te Korowai</i>. (Year 3) Marine environment 10.5.25 Worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to identify priority marine environments and species for further research, and developed a research implementation programme. (Year 5) Pests, threats and wild animals 10.5.26 Worked with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and Northland Regional Council to prioritise and align annual plant and animal pest management programmes to ensure an integrated approach. (Year 3) 10.5.27 Contributed to the enhancement of landscape-wide predator, pest animal and weed control programmes, resulting in 100% reduction on the previous tally of all pests. (Year 10) Fire management 10.5.28 Created a fire management plan for Te Hiku in partnership with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and FENZ. (Year 2)

Continued on next page

Section 10.5 table continued

CATEGORY	MILESTONES
Historic values	Bringing history to life 10.5.29 Investigated the potential for Tohu Whenua sites within <i>Te Korowai</i>. (Year 5) Managed historic sites 10.5.30 Developed criteria for tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to determine how sites of cultural relevance are given appropriate recognition within <i>Te Korowai</i>. (Year 3) 10.5.31 Undertaken a review of existing actively managed historic sites to identify sites on the list that do not require active management. (Year 1) 10.5.32 Investigated known historic sites to identify those that require active management. (Year 5) 10.5.33 Reviewed existing heritage assessments that have been prepared for actively managed historic sites to better reflect cultural narratives and stories, and developed heritage assessments for any newly identified sites. (Year 10) 10.5.34 Undertaken an extensive survey of the midden sites within the coastal area (including Tauroa Point dunes) to re-record known sites, identify recently exposed sites, make management recommendations and identify sites for further investigation. (Years 1 and 3) Capability building 10.5.35 Developed and implemented a programme for capacity building to enable tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to actively manage historic sites. (Year 5)
Recreational values	Protecting natural values 10.5.36 Identified sites that need to be closed for protection purposes due to risk from kauri disease or other pests and threats, and implemented additional management measures. (Year 1) Monitoring 10.5.37 In collaboration with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), identified amendments to visitor management and destination management zones using baseline data from priority recreation sites. (Year 5) Increasing recreation 10.5.38 Supported tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) economic aspirations by investigating the development of alternative routes and connections for recreational opportunities on land, including potential alternative routes for Te Araroa, in collaboration with Te Araroa Trust and Outdoor Access Commission Herenga ā Nuku Aotearoa. (Year 5)

11. Ngā whakaritenga kaupapa here ā-rohe

Regional policy requirements

The policies in this section apply across Te Korowai lands and waters, and various activities will require authorisation. The most common authorisations are for concessions (for a trade, occupation or business) and permits.

Treaty settlement legislation has established a decision-making framework that applies conservation decisions within *Te Korowai* and allows the transfer of decision-making and review functions for activities relating to customary materials and wāhi tapu within *Te Korowai* and decisions relating to Te Rerenga Wairua Historic Reserve and the Warawara Forest. These are outlined in Appendix 1 in Volume II.

At the time of Te Hiku CMS becoming operative, not all the elements required to enable the agreed framework have been developed. In the interim, it is recommended that decision-makers consider reduced terms for all authorisations. The intent behind this is to provide the time for these elements to be created, while ensuring that Te Hiku iwi are not left with a legacy of concessions and permits that they had little-to-no input in.

11.1 Ngā kaupapa here whānui ā-rohe

General regional policies

A range of activities is provided for where consistent with legislation, the Conservation General Policy 2005, and the outcomes and policies included in Part Two – Places.

All applications for authorisations are assessed against the policies in this section, in addition to any activity-specific policies contained in Part Three. Policies in this section also apply to Te Papa Atawhai when undertaking work in this area.

Policies 11.1.13 to 11.1.17 address preferential allocation of concessions to Te Hiku iwi. This approach is required by the Te Hiku Claims Settlement Acts⁴¹ and is consistent with the 2018 Supreme Court decision in the Ngāi Tai case.⁴²

The most likely scenario for preferential allocation is where there is a limited supply, which generally occurs where either:

- a) there is a limit to the volume of an activity to manage effects (e.g. the number of aircraft landings in an area); or
- b) it is a lease for exclusive use of an area, meaning that only one party can be given the concession.

Given these requirements, Policies 11.1.13 to 11.1.17 are included to support decision-makers in considering whether the circumstances justify a reasonable degree of preference for Te Hiku iwi in the allocation of authorisations. They include considering whether iwi hold mana o te whenua and whether there is a strong connection to the activity and/or place. These factors will also support

⁴¹ For example, see Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015, Schedule 4, clause 10(2). legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/0079/latest/DLM6578192.html

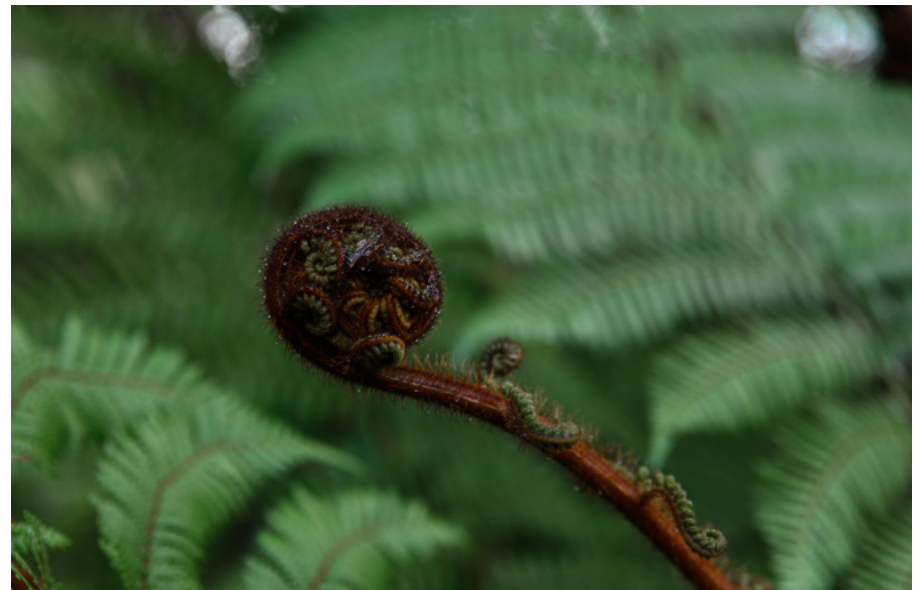
⁴² *Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki Tribal Trust v Minister of Conservation* [2018] NZSC 122. courts.fnz.govt.nz/cases/ngai-tai-ki-tamaki-tribal-trust-v-minister-of-conservation-1

decision-makers in determining to whom authorisations are allocated when there are multiple applicants who affiliate to Te Hiku iwi.

There are also other considerations that decision-makers should take into account, alongside preference for Te Hiku iwi, when allocating authorisations. The policies identify some of these significant considerations to support applicants preparing applications and the decision-makers considering those applications.

Where there are multiple interested parties in limited supply situations, examples of allocation methods include:

- a) inviting expressions of interest or applications (not activity specific); and
- b) requesting a proposal or tender (for a specific activity).



Top: Pāpāuma/broadleaf (*Griselinia littoralis*), Warawara Forest. Photo: Kylie McDowell
Bottom: Kātote/Smith's tree fern (*Alsophila smithii*), Warawara Forest. Photo: Alannah Lett

11.1 POLICIES (NGĀ KAUPAPA HERE WHĀNUI Ā-ROHE | GENERAL REGIONAL POLICIES)

- 11.1.1** Must give effect to Te Tiriti o Waitangi principles when making statutory decisions on all authorisations and determine how each principle is applied on a case-by-case basis, considering the facts and interests at each relevant Place.
- 11.1.2** Should not grant authorisations where they are inconsistent with the:
- a) Conservation General Policy 2005, including any amendments to this policy;
 - b) outcomes, objectives and policies for Te Hiku CMS;
 - c) purposes for which the Te Korowai lands and waters concerned are held;
 - d) visitor management zones, as shown in the maps in Volume III and described in Appendix 11 in Volume II, except in accordance with policies 11.2.1–11.2.16 for aircraft use;
 - e) Kaupapa Tuku Iho (see section 1.1, Part One);
 - f) Warawara Whenua Ngāhere I te Taiao;
 - g) Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Plan; and
 - h) Te Rerenga Wairua Conservation Management Plan, if developed.
- 11.1.3** Must apply the ‘Decision-making framework’ and ‘Transfer of decision-making and review functions’ when making statutory decisions on all authorisations relating to the ‘Customary materials plan’, ‘Wāhi tapu framework’ and ‘Protection of spiritual and cultural integrity of Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve’, as set out in Treaty settlement legislation. Where elements of the decision-making framework have not been established, decision-makers should consider a reduced term for concessions and permits.
- 11.1.4** Should allow for access to Te Korowai lands and waters to be restricted or closed, following engagement with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and stakeholders, for reasons of public safety or emergency, or to:
- a) protect natural, historic or cultural values;
 - b) control biosecurity risks;
 - c) enable the control or eradication of pests using aerial bait operations;
 - d) allow military exercise operations; or
 - e) allow tree felling.
- 11.1.5** Where access restrictions or closures are applied, these will be:
- a) outlined on the Te Papa Atawhai website; and
 - b) reviewed on a regular basis following engagement with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and stakeholders.

Continued on next page

-
- 11.1.6** When undertaking any work or activities, determine whether these are covered by Appendix 2 in Volume II and, therefore, meet the requirements of section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemption from land-use consents.
- 11.1.7** Should encourage people and require concessionaires undertaking activities on Te Korowai lands and waters to comply with activity-specific minimum impact codes (care codes) as notified from time to time on the Te Papa Atawhai website.
- 11.1.8** Work with Toitū Te Whenua LINZ, Outdoor Access Commission Herenga ā Nuku Aotearoa, local authorities, Northland Fish & Game Council, adjoining landowners, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), other agencies and the public to achieve the integrated management of legal roads adjoining Te Korowai lands and waters where actual or potential activity on or near these roads creates difficulties by:
- a) seeking that the public voluntarily manage their use of these roads in a way that is consistent with the management of adjoining Te Korowai lands and waters;
 - b) enabling Te Papa Atawhai to manage and facilitate recreation on these roads in a way that is consistent with the management of adjoining Te Korowai lands and waters;
 - c) seeking the active management and facilitation of recreation on these roads by local authorities in a way that is consistent with the management of adjoining Te Korowai lands and waters; and
 - d) stopping or resuming use of these roads and removing them from or adding them to the adjoining Te Korowai lands and waters.
- 11.1.9** Work cooperatively with FENZ to increase awareness of and reduce fire risks relating to Te Korowai lands and waters, Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata, and Treaty settlement lands, and inform visitors about how to mitigate any risks.
- 11.1.10** Require research and collection permit holders, including those contracted by Te Papa Atawhai, to work in partnership and participate in the capability and capacity building of tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) by making educational opportunities available, and ensure that the research is shared with relevant whānau, hapū and iwi (where requested) through the consultation process.
- 11.1.11** Should collaborate with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) on any applications for research or bioprospecting of species of cultural importance.
- 11.1.12** May request one or more of the following when considering applications for authorisations:
- a) An assessment of the activity's expected carbon emissions
 - b) An assessment of natural hazards the activity could be subject to and whether the frequency of those hazards is likely to increase due to climate change
 - c) Identification of climate change adaptation or mitigation measures that could be applied to respond to the assessments undertaken in (a) and (b) above
 - d) Where climate change adaptation or mitigation measures conflict with conservation outcomes, identification of other solutions that could be applied to minimise the overall climate change effects of the activity
 - e) An assessment of whether the proposed activity increases or decreases the overall vulnerability of taonga species, places and people to climate change
-

Continued on next page

- 11.1.13** Must give a reasonable degree of preference to applicants affiliated with Te Hiku iwi where the amount of an activity that can be authorised is limited for whatever reason or the authorisation is a lease (and therefore provides exclusive use), if the circumstances justify doing so.
- 11.1.14** Should consider the following when determining whether the circumstances justify giving Te Hiku iwi affiliated applicants a degree of preference and, if so, what degree of preference is reasonable:
- a) The strength of association of the specific Te Hiku iwi to the relevant Te Korowai lands and waters
 - b) Whether the activity would be undertaken by a collectively owned tribal entity rather than individual members, with greater preference given to tribal collectives
 - c) The extent to which each application would give effect to and promote the values outlined in Kaupapa Tuku Iho (see section 1.1, Part One)
 - d) Whether active protection regarding taonga katoa or the subject of tino rangatiratanga is required
 - e) Whether Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui iwi are pioneers of the activity and have expended energy and capital to initiate it
- 11.1.15** Should consider the following for all applications:
- a) Each applicant's experience in undertaking the activity
 - b) Each applicant's compliance record with conservation authorisations
 - c) Existing concessionaire(s), or other authorised parties, and any infrastructure owned by them
 - d) Mechanisms to avoid adverse effects on visitor experiences and *Te Korowai* conservation values
 - e) The extent to which each application would enhance visitor experiences and *Te Korowai* values
 - f) The amount of any rental or royalty to be paid for undertaking the activity
 - g) The need to avoid the creation of monopolies where practical
- 11.1.16** Should determine the most relevant allocation method to gauge interest in the activity and consider the matters above when determining who is granted an authorisation. Allocation methods include but are not limited to:
- a) inviting expressions of interest or applications;
 - b) requesting a proposal or tender;
 - c) running an auction; and
 - d) making a direct offer.

Continued on next page

11.1.17 May grant an authorisation directly if satisfied that:

- a) there is no interest from Te Hiku iwi affiliated parties; or
 - b) the circumstances would not justify a degree of preference; or
 - c) granting the authorisation would not practically limit the ability of others to apply for an equivalent authorisation because there is sufficient carrying capacity for additional authorisations.
-

11.2 Ngā manurere Aircraft

All aircraft, including remotely piloted and non-powered aircraft, require a concession to land on, take off from or hover over (collectively referred to as 'landings' on) Te Korowai lands and waters, other than for certain activities, as listed in Policy 11.2.1.

Te Papa Atawhai manages the effects of aircraft on public conservation lands and waters using four nationally consistent aircraft access zones, as outlined in Appendix 13 in Volume II. These can be summarised as follows:

- Red Zone is used for areas where a concession application to land an aircraft should be declined (with some exceptions).
- Yellow Zone is used for areas where a concession application to land an aircraft should be granted where it meets the nationally consistent limits for this zone.
- Orange Zone is used for areas where there are complex issues to be managed that require limits and/or other criteria to guide whether concessions for aircraft landings can be granted.
- Green Zone is used for areas where a concession application to land an aircraft is likely to be granted, subject to any relevant outcome and/or criteria in the policies.

It is not always desirable for safety and other reasons to have powered, remotely piloted and non-powered aircraft operating in the same space. These can also have different adverse effects on conservation values.

At the time of approval of Te Hiku CMS, there were relatively few concessions for remotely piloted and non-powered aircraft in Te Korowai lands and waters. Additionally, there was little information available about their effects on natural, cultural, historic and recreational values.

To balance the protection of conservation values and enable the use of powered, remotely piloted and non-powered aircraft, separate aircraft access

zones apply. For powered aircraft, the aircraft access zones are Red or Green Zone, while for remotely piloted and non-powered aircraft, they are Orange Zone.

The general aircraft policies apply to all aircraft types. There are then specific policies for powered, remotely piloted and non-powered aircraft.

The remotely piloted and non-powered aircraft policies provide flexibility to enable or restrict aircraft landings at specific locations on Te Korowai lands and waters, based on iwi consultation and effects. The policies also allow flexibility in aircraft management over time, as more information, new technologies and different management options become available.

Alongside the concession requirements for aircraft landings, remotely piloted aircraft operators also need to comply with the relevant New Zealand Civil Aviation Authority rules, which require remotely piloted aircraft operators to get the consent of property owners and people they are flying over. This means that permission (i.e. a concession) is required to fly over Te Korowai lands and waters, even if the remotely piloted aircraft does not take off or land there.

Applications for a concession to land and operate remotely piloted aircraft on and over Te Korowai lands and waters can be made online via the Te Papa Atawhai website. The Te Papa Atawhai Standard Drone Operating Conditions can also be found here, which operators need to understand and comply with.

While noise is not an issue for non-powered aircraft, their use can:

- have adverse effects on other users of Te Korowai lands and waters, impacting on values such as amenity, wildlife, remoteness and cultural values; and
- be incompatible with, or adversely impact, adjacent private land.

Pilots of non-powered aircraft also need to comply with the relevant New Zealand Civil Aviation Authority rules.

11.2 POLICIES (NGĀ MANURERE | AIRCRAFT)

General

- 11.2.1** Require all aircraft operators to obtain a concession to land on Te Korowai lands and waters, other than for:
- a) search and rescue;
 - b) Te Papa Atawhai management purposes;
 - c) emergency situations;
 - d) maritime navigational aid management;
 - e) land survey work;
 - f) aircraft operated by the New Zealand Defence Force or New Zealand Civil Aviation Authority; and
 - g) any mining activity authorised under the Crown Minerals Act 1991.⁴³
- 11.2.2** Should apply but not be limited to the following criteria when assessing concession applications for all aircraft landings:
- a) Is consistent with the relevant aircraft access zones, as shown in Maps 9.1–9.5 in Volume III.
 - b) Adverse effects on natural values, including natural quiet, cultural, historic and recreational values, are avoided or minimised.
 - c) Adverse effects on other visitors are avoided or minimised, taking into account the size of the zone and the proximity of other ground users.
- 11.2.3** May grant concessions for any aircraft landings associated with commercial filming and photography, and sporting and other competitive events where they do not meet the limits and/or criteria in the relevant Green or Orange Zones or prescriptions for visitor management zones in Appendix 11 in Volume II, based on their merits and subject to an assessment of mechanisms that may be used to address any adverse effects, including cumulative effects, by:
- a) informing neighbours and potential visitors to the site that the activity is to occur and is occurring;
 - b) avoiding peak visitor times; and
 - c) avoiding or protecting sites with high natural, historic or cultural values.

Continued on next page

⁴³ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1991/70/en/latest/#DLM242536

	11.2.4 May grant concessions for any aircraft landings where they do not meet the criteria and/or limits of the relevant Red, Orange or Green Zones: a) for the construction, operation and/or maintenance of equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems, transmission lines) authorised by Te Papa Atawhai; b) for wild animal control activities in accordance with Policies 11.15.1 and 11.15.2; or c) to support research, monitoring or the collection of material authorised by Te Papa Atawhai. 11.2.5 May include conditions, where relevant, in concessions for all aircraft landings to: a) prohibit landings near specified tracks, huts, campsites or car parks; b) use GPS and other technologies for aircraft monitoring purposes; c) hold, and comply with, certification in a noise management scheme approved by Te Papa Atawhai in specified locations; and d) comply with best practice protocols for managing the spread of biosecurity risks and invasive species, including kauri disease, Argentine ants, myrtle rust and plague skinks (<i>Lampropholis delicata</i>). 11.2.6 Update the Te Papa Atawhai website as necessary to provide information on locations where concessions for remotely piloted and non-powered aircraft landings can likely, or are unlikely to, be granted.
Powered aircraft	11.2.7 Should grant concessions for powered aircraft landings in the Green Zone, as shown in Maps 9.1 to 9.5 in Volume III and outlined in Appendix 13 in Volume II, subject to the approval of relevant iwi as required under Treaty settlement legislation. 11.2.8 Advocate to aviation controllers and aircraft operators to manage powered aircraft flight paths to avoid adverse effects on Te Korowai lands and waters. 11.2.9 Work with powered aircraft operators overflying Te Korowai lands and waters to establish voluntary codes of conduct that reflect the requirements of visitor management zones for those lands and waters.

Continued on next page

Remotely piloted aircraft	11.2.10	Require the operator of a remotely piloted aircraft flying over Te Korowai lands and waters to apply for a concession, whether or not the aircraft takes off or lands on Te Korowai lands and waters.
	11.2.11	May grant concessions for remotely piloted aircraft use in accordance with Policies 11.2.1–11.2.5 and Policy 11.2.12.
	11.2.12	May include conditions, where relevant, in concessions for the use of remotely piloted aircraft to: a) operate in specific <i>Te Korowai</i> areas; b) restrict use near sites of natural, cultural or historic significance; and c) mitigate adverse effects on: (i) Te Korowai lands and waters; (ii) other users of Te Korowai lands and waters; and (iii) adjacent private land.
	11.2.13	Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to identify and approve: a) <i>Te Korowai</i> site-specific areas for remotely piloted aircraft use; and b) <i>Te Korowai</i> areas with wāhi tapu sites, where concessions for remotely piloted aircraft use should not be granted.
Non-powered aircraft	11.2.14	May grant concessions for non-powered aircraft use in accordance with Policies 11.2.1–11.2.5 and Policies 11.2.14–11.2.15.
	11.2.15	May include conditions in concessions for the use of non-powered aircraft conditions to: a) operate in specific <i>Te Korowai</i> areas; b) restrict landings near sites of natural, cultural or historic significance; and c) mitigate adverse effects on: (i) Te Korowai lands and waters; (ii) other users of Te Korowai lands and waters; and (iii) adjacent private land.
	11.2.16	Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) to identify and approve: a) <i>Te Korowai</i> site-specific areas for non-powered aircraft use; b) <i>Te Korowai</i> areas with wāhi tapu sites, where concessions for non-powered aircraft use should not be granted.

11.3 Ngā pouaka pī Beehives

A concession is required to place beehives on Te Korowai lands and waters. Bees are known to have a range of potential effects on sensitive ecosystems. Knowledge of the extent of these effects is developing and will be further improved through monitoring.

11.3 POLICIES (NGĀ POUAKA PĪ | BEEHIVES)

- 11.3.1** May grant concessions for the placement of beehives on Te Korowai lands and waters if the proposal:
- a) avoids conflicts with other users, including requiring a buffer between beehive sites, facilities and structures used by Te Papa Atawhai staff and the public, wāhi tapu sites, and sites used to collect customary materials;
 - b) places beehives only in areas with natural clearings where vegetation clearance is not required;
 - c) avoids, remedies or mitigates any adverse effects on indigenous species, including by requiring compliance with best management practices to ensure that pest species are not translocated; and
 - d) places beehives only in areas where access does not require earthworks to be undertaken.
-

11.4 Ngā mahi kiriata tauhokohoko, hopu whakaahua, hākinakina whakataetae hoki Commercial filming, photography, and sporting and other competitive events

Concessions are required for any filming and photography (filming activities) undertaken for gain or reward within Te Korowai lands and waters. Filming activities can include crew, film equipment, vehicles, aircraft, animals, sets and/or special effects.

The Conservation General Policy 2005 states that filming should be subject to the same assessment procedures and conditions as other users, and that particular care should be taken to ensure that filming activities do not adversely affect the values of sites of significance, including those of significance to tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi).

Sporting and other competitive events, including endurance races, multi-sport and orienteering events, require a concession. These events are part of a spectrum of recreational opportunities that may be suited to particular areas on Te Korowai lands and waters.

11.4 POLICIES (KIRIATA TAUHOKOHOKO, HOPU WHAKAAHUA, HĀKINAKINA WHAKATAETAE HOKI | COMMERCIAL FILMING, PHOTOGRAPHY, AND SPORTING AND OTHER COMPETITIVE EVENTS)

General	11.4.1	May grant authorisations for commercial filming and photography, or sporting and other competitive events where: a) these are not in accordance with Policies 11.2.1–11.2.7 for aircraft use or the visitor management zones as shown in the maps in Volume III and described in Appendix 11 in Volume II; and b) mechanisms are used to address any adverse effects, including: (i) kauri disease mitigation; (ii) natural hazard management; (iii) visitor risk management plans; (iv) informing neighbours and potential visitors to the site that the event or activity is to occur or is occurring; (v) avoiding peak visitor times; and (vi) avoiding or protecting sites with high natural, historic or cultural values.
Commercial filming and photography	11.4.2	Should grant concessions for commercial filming and photography within Te Korowai lands and waters (except for the Warawara Forest) only where conflicts between recreational values, cultural values (including wāhi tapu and sites of significance), natural values, tourism uses and the filming activity have been assessed. For cultural values (if relevant), this includes a cultural impact assessment or agreement undertaken in conjunction with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi).
	11.4.3	Should require compliance with the latest version of the Code of Practice: Filming on Public Conservation Lands (2009) ⁴⁴ in all concessions for filming activities.
	11.4.4	Should require the authorised person to give tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) the opportunity to review and comment on the film or photographic content prior to release where the area contains cultural values, including wāhi tapu, sites of significance or taonga species.

Continued on next page

⁴⁴ doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/concessions-and-permits/concessions/code-of-practice-filming-on-public-conservation-lands.pdf

Sporting and other competitive events	11.4.5	May grant authorisations for organised sporting or other competitive events, provided that adequate public notification of the event can occur before the event and policies within each Place allow for such an event.
	11.4.6	May waive or reduce the requirement for public notification in circumstances where details of a sporting or other competitive event are not disclosed to participants in advance if satisfied that the adverse effects will be minimal and following confidential consultation with Te Hiku o Te Ika Conservation Board.
	11.4.7	May require the authorisation holder to ensure that participants in a sporting or other competitive event comply with a management plan developed with the authorisation holder for the specific activity.
	11.4.8	In all authorisations for sporting and other competitive events, should require: a) fire safety contingencies in high fire risk areas, including events being cancelled at short notice; and b) participants to be provided with information on conservation values, including cultural values, in consultation with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and need to include opportunities for involvement in conservation programmes.

11.5 Te mahi hī ika me whakangangahu manu

Fishing and game bird hunting

Te Papa Atawhai is responsible for protecting and preserving freshwater fisheries (including tuna/eel fisheries) and freshwater fish habitats within Te Korowai lands and waters. The Ministry for Primary Industries manages commercial eeling under the Fisheries Act 1996,⁴⁵ the Fisheries (Commercial Fishing) Regulations 2001⁴⁶ and other associated regulations.

Commercial eel fishers require a concession to access Te Korowai lands and waters, and concessions can be limited within areas administered by Te Papa Atawhai to protect natural resources, including tuna. The recreational and commercial take of indigenous fauna, such as tuna and whitebait, from reserves administered under the Reserves Act 1977 is also subject to section 50(1) of that Act ('Taking or killing of fauna')⁴⁷ and section 26ZHB of the Conservation Act 1987 ('Prohibitions and restrictions on taking of indigenous freshwater fish').⁴⁸

Te Papa Atawhai and regional Fish & Game councils work together to manage sports fish and fishing within Te Korowai lands and waters, including preventing the introduction of salmonid fish to waters where they are not legally present, to protect habitat values.

11.5 POLICIES (TE MAHI HĪ IKA ME WHAKANGANGAHU MANU | FISHING AND GAME BIRD HUNTING)

Commercial eeling	11.5.1	Should not grant concessions for: a) commercial eeling within Te Korowai lands and waters; and b) access over Te Korowai lands and waters where this is required to reach a proposed commercial eeling site to ensure the preservation of tuna species.
	11.5.2	Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), Ministry for Primary Industries, commercial eelers and the community to protect indigenous tuna populations and their habitats on and adjacent to Te Korowai lands and waters.
Recreational whitebaiting and eeling	11.5.3	Will only grant authorisations for recreational whitebaiting and eeling where: a) the effects of the fishing are understood; and b) the effects on indigenous species or ecosystems within those waters have been assessed.

Continued on next page

⁴⁵ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1996/0088/latest/DLM394192.html

⁴⁶ legislation.govt.nz/regulation/public/2001/0253/latest/whole.html

⁴⁷ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1977/0066/latest/DLM444707.html

⁴⁸ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1987/0065/latest/LMS268910.html

Sports fishing and game bird hunting	11.5.4	Should not approve the introduction of salmonid fish to waters where they are not already present.
	11.5.5	Work with the Northland Fish & Game Council and others to: a) preserve indigenous freshwater fisheries; b) protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats that are at risk of loss or decline; c) manage fishing and game bird hunting within Te Korowai lands and waters; and d) protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats from invasive species and biosecurity threats.

11.6 Te mau punga

Fixed anchors

Fixed anchors are placed into rock for rope-access activities such as rock climbing, abseiling, caving and canyoning. These anchor points are usually drilled, bolted or glued in place and remain permanently in the rock face. Te Papa Atawhai works with the New Zealand Alpine Club (NZAC), a representative advocate for climbers, and liaises with other recreation groups on these issues. NZAC has developed a Rock Climbing Access Framework (2017),⁴⁹ Landowner Guidelines (2017),⁵⁰ Bolting Philosophy and Standards (for Route Developers) (2017),⁵¹ and Code of Conduct for Rock Climbers (2017)⁵² to help ensure safe and consistent bolting and environmental responsibility.

The natural environment can have inherent risks, and people are responsible for making their own decisions about the risks they are prepared to take within Te Korowai lands and waters. The use of fixed anchors has inherent risks to users that are known and accepted by those users. Rock climbing is not currently a popular recreational activity in *Te Korowai*, although this may change over the life of Te Hiku CMS and, as such, a precautionary approach has been taken by including the policies below.

⁴⁹ New Zealand Alpine Club. 2017. New Zealand Alpine Club Rock Climbing Access Framework. Christchurch: New Zealand Alpine Club.
alpineclub.org.nz/sites/default/files/2021-01/NZAC-1.-Access-Framework_Dec-2017.pdf

⁵⁰ New Zealand Alpine Club. 2017. New Zealand Alpine Club NZAC Landowner Guidelines. Christchurch: New Zealand Alpine Club.
alpineclub.org.nz/sites/default/files/2021-01/NZAC-2.-Landowner-Guidelines_Dec-2017.pdf

⁵¹ New Zealand Alpine Club. 2017. Bolting Philosophy and Standards (for Route Developers). Christchurch: New Zealand Alpine Club.
alpineclub.org.nz/sites/default/files/2021-01/NZAC-3.-Bolting-Standards_Dec-2017.pdf

⁵² New Zealand Alpine Club. 2017. New Zealand Alpine Club Code of Conduct for Rock Climbers. Christchurch: New Zealand Alpine Club.
alpineclub.org.nz/sites/default/files/2021-01/NZAC-4.-Code-of-Conduct-for-Rock-Climbers-Dec-2017.pdf

11.6 POLICIES (TE MAU PUNGA | FIXED ANCHORS)

- 11.6.1** Work with NZAC, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and other recreation groups to identify unauthorised fixed anchors in Te Korowai lands and waters and remove any that are unsafe.
- 11.6.2** Work with NZAC, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and other recreation groups to identify areas that are suitable for the placement of fixed anchors in Te Korowai lands and waters through:
- a) avoiding adverse effects on priority ecosystem units, threatened or at-risk species, and significant geological features, landforms and landscapes;
 - b) avoiding adverse effects on wāhi tapu and sites of significance to tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi); and
 - c) addressing public safety issues.
- 11.6.3** May authorise the placement of fixed anchors in Te Korowai lands and waters where:
- a) consultation with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), NZAC, other recreation groups and stakeholders has been undertaken; and
 - b) the activity is in accordance with NZAC's Rock Climbing Access Framework (2017), Landowner Guidelines (2017), Bolting Philosophy and Standards (for Route Developers) (2017), Code of Conduct for Rock Climbers (2017), and any other updated guidance.
- 11.6.4** Encourage and support NZAC to take the lead on fixed anchor management:
- a) in accordance with NZAC's Rock Climbing Access Framework (2017), Landowner Guidelines (2017), Bolting Philosophy and Standards (for Route Developers) (2017), Code of Conduct for Rock Climbers (2017), and any other updated guidance; and
 - b) in consultation with Te Papa Atawhai, tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and the local climbing community.
-

11.7 Te kaikai a te kararehe me te mahi ahuwhehua

Grazing and farming

Grazing concessions, or management agreements for exotic vegetation control, need to be consistent with Policy 11.2 of the Conservation General Policy 2005, in addition to the policy below.

11.7 POLICIES (TE KAIKAI A TE KARAREHE ME TE MAHI AHUWHENUA | GRAZING AND FARMING)

- 11.7.1** Should authorise grazing and farming within Te Korowai lands and waters only where:
- a) the land is suitable for grazing and farming;
 - b) the catchment is not sensitive to increased sediments or nutrients;
 - c) there is no increased flooding risk;
 - d) livestock are kept out of the waterways;
 - e) waterway protection measures included in the Regional Plan for Northland,⁵³ the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management (2020),⁵⁴ and any other updated plan and national regulations are complied with; and
 - f) the activity provides additional benefits in terms of pest plant and animal control and general maintenance of otherwise unused Te Korowai lands and waters.
-

11.8 Mātakitaki whakangote moana

Marine mammal viewing

Marine mammals are protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978⁵⁵ and the Marine Mammals Protection Regulations 1992,⁵⁶ and the commercial viewing of marine mammals is authorised by the Director-General of Te Papa Atawhai.

A marine mammal sanctuary in Pēwhairangi/the Bay of Islands has been gazetted, which will further restrict the way in which existing tourism operators with permits, commercial maritime operators and recreational vessels are able to interact with marine mammals. While Pēwhairangi is not within *Te Korowai*, this marine mammal sanctuary may have flow-on effects on *Te Korowai*, given its proximity. However, these effects are currently unknown, particularly in terms of the establishment of similar commercial activities. Permit holders for these activities may still seek to carry out marine mammal viewing activities in *Te Korowai*, so a precautionary approach has been adopted by including the policies below.

⁵³ nrc.govt.nz/resource-library-summary/plans-and-policies/regional-plan

⁵⁴ environment.govt.nz/acts-and-regulations/national-policy-statements/national-policy-statement-freshwater-management

⁵⁵ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1978/0080/latest/DLM25111.html

⁵⁶ legislation.govt.nz/regulation/public/1992/0322/latest/DLM168286.html

11.8 POLICIES (MĀTAKITAKI WHAKANGOTE MOANA | MARINE MAMMAL VIEWING)

11.8.1 Should grant marine mammal viewing permits only where:

- a) a precautionary approach is taken to the viewing effort of commercial operators that are involved in marine mammal operations in the area, including a consideration of reduced permit terms;
- b) a high standard of interpretation is provided to the clients;
- c) breeding and nursing areas and seasons for the threatened marine mammals listed in Appendix 8 in Volume II are avoided;
- d) regard is given to any existing marine mammal stranding protocols; and
- e) cultural values that are associated with the proposed viewing area and marine mammal(s) have been appropriately considered and assessed through a cultural impact assessment, with recommendations carried out.

11.8.2 Should encourage passive, land-based marine mammal viewing operations in the first instance.

11.8.3 Should support research by others into the effects of human interactions with marine mammals.

11.9 Te mahi maina Mining

The prospecting, exploration and mining of Crown-owned mineral deposits is managed by the Ministry of Business, Innovation & Employment in accordance with the Crown Minerals Act 1991. Under that Act, the Minister of Conservation's role is limited to approving access arrangements over Te Korowai lands and waters (referred to nationally as public conservation lands and waters). Access arrangements cannot be granted for any land included in Schedule 4 of the Act (which includes all national parks, wilderness areas, nature reserves, scientific reserves and marine reserves), except in limited circumstances, as set out in the Act.

11.9 POLICIES (TE MAHI MAINA | MINING)

11.9.1 Should not enter into access arrangements where there is the potential to adversely affect the threatened or at-risk species identified in Appendix 7 in Volume II or the priority historic, cultural, natural or recreation sites identified in the maps in Volume III.

11.9.2 May include specific conditions (which may be a bond) in access arrangements to require:

- a) Te Korowai lands and waters to be restored to as natural a condition as possible; and
 - b) off-site mitigation and offsetting.
-

11.10 Ngā whare noho motuhake

Private accommodation

The existing structures within Te Korowai lands and waters include some private accommodation and related facilities that are not available for use by the public. Under the Conservation General Policy 2005, the use of private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, solely for private purposes is to be phased out, except where specifically provided for or allowed in legislation.

11.10 POLICIES (NGĀ WHARE NOHO MOTUHAKE | PRIVATE ACCOMMODATION)

- 11.10.1** Should not authorise new private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, within Te Korowai lands and waters.
- 11.10.2** Should phase out all existing private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on Te Korowai lands and waters that are not otherwise specifically provided for or allowed in legislation by either:
- a) phasing in public use of the building(s); or
 - b) removing the building(s), unless retained by Te Papa Atawhai.
- 11.10.3** Should consult with Te Hiku o Te Ika Conservation Board when assessing a concession application for existing unauthorised private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, to determine whether an authorisation for a temporary arrangement may be granted and how the phase-out Policy 11.10.2 should be applied.
- 11.10.4** Should specify the following conditions if accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, are authorised in accordance with Policy 11.10.2:
- a) In the case of Policy 11.10.2(a), the building(s) are to be made available for use by the public with specific conditions on how this is enabled, including the requirement for any costs charged to the public to be reasonable.
 - b) In the case of Policy 11.10.2(b), the building(s) are to be removed, remove the building(s) within 18 months of the death of the person named on the authorisation as at 30 July 2023 or within 18 months of approval of Te Hiku CMS, whichever occurs first.
- 11.10.5** Should specify the following conditions if accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, are authorised in accordance with Policy 11.10.2:
- a) The style and character of all buildings are to remain essentially unmodified.
 - b) The floor area and footprint of all buildings are not to increase beyond those existing at the time of granting the authorisation.
 - c) All buildings need to comply with the Building Act 2004,⁵⁷ the Building Code and local authority requirements.

Continued on next page

57 legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2004/0072/latest/DLM306036.html

- d) Transfer and/or assignment of the authorisation to another party should not be authorised.
- e) The concessionaire needs to indemnify Te Papa Atawhai against any loss resulting from the use of the building(s) or the cost of removing the building(s).
- f) A standard clause covers public liability implications, including adequate insurance and/or bonds to cover the indemnity.

11.10.6 Should, where an existing authorisation contains a right of renewal, grant (subject to the terms of the existing authorisation) the renewal of an authorisation for private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on Te Korowai lands and waters only to the existing authorisation holder, if:

- a) the right of renewal is exercised by the authorisation holder before the existing authority expires; and
- b) the person holding the authorisation has complied with all the terms and conditions of the authorisation.

11.10.7 Should not authorise the substantial repair or replacement of private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, if:

- a) a building falls into substantial disrepair and needs work that requires a building consent under the Building Act 2004; or
- b) a building is destroyed or so damaged by an event (e.g. fire, flood) as to render it untenable.

11.11 Te unutanga o te oneone, te kirikiri me te kiripōhatu Sand, shingle and gravel extraction

Sand, shingle and gravel extraction from riverbeds or coastal areas is managed and allocated by regional councils under the Resource Management Act 1991; however, any person wanting to undertake this activity within Te Korowai lands and waters will also require separate authorisation from Te Papa Atawhai.

11.11 POLICIES (TE UNUTANGA O TE ONEONE, TE KIRIKIRI ME TE KIRIPŌHATU | SAND, SHINGLE AND GRAVEL EXTRACTION)

- 11.11.1** Should authorise the removal of sand, shingle and gravel from Te Korowai lands and waters only where adverse effects have been assessed and conditions are included requiring management measures for the protection and enhancement of indigenous biodiversity and waterways.
- 11.11.2** May include a condition in authorisations granted under Policy 11.11.1 requiring mitigation actions to assist in indigenous ecosystem management.
- 11.11.3** Work with regional authorities to achieve integrated management of the extraction of sand, shingle and gravel on land adjacent to Te Korowai lands and waters.

11.12 Ngā hanganga me ngā whaipanga Structures, utilities and facilities

Most structures within Te Korowai lands and waters have a purpose related to:

- the operational requirements of Te Papa Atawhai and its partners;
- utilities that provide essential public services, such as telecommunications, energy generation, transmission and distribution, sewerage, water supply, flood control, oil and gas transmission, roads and airstrips, hydrological and weather stations, and seismic monitoring; and
- facilities, such as huts and tracks, that enable the public's appreciation and enjoyment of the intrinsic natural, historic and cultural values that are consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held.

11.12 POLICIES (NGĀ HANGANGA ME NGĀ WHAIPAINGA | STRUCTURES, UTILITIES AND FACILITIES)

11.12.1 Should authorise the erection or retention of structures, utilities and facilities or the adaptive reuse of existing structures, utilities and facilities on Te Korowai lands and waters only where the activity is in accordance with Policy 11.12.2.

11.12.2 Should authorise the erection of new structures within Te Korowai lands and waters only where:

- a) the activity promotes a connection to natural, recreational or cultural values, including enabling kaitiakitanga practices (e.g. pou), or is an essential public utility; and
- b) consideration has been given to the sustainability of the materials to be used and on-site servicing, while ensuring that the method of construction is suitable for the location.

11.13 Ngā waka i te whenua, ngā waka i te wai Vehicles and watercraft

A 'vehicle' includes:

- any motor vehicle, such as cars, 4WD vehicles and motorcycles; and
- any bike, such as mountain bikes, adaptive bikes and electric power-assisted pedal cycles (e-bikes).

A 'watercraft' includes any motorised or non-motorised vessel, such as boats, kayaks, canoes, inflatable rafts and paddle boards.

Vehicle and watercraft use can adversely affect natural, cultural and recreational values. Protection of these values is taken into account when identifying the locations where vehicles and watercraft can be used. However, in some circumstances, additional restrictions and conditions are necessary. Any decision making associated with vehicle use on Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē must give consideration to Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Plan.

The watercraft policies apply to their use on and in freshwater bodies and estuarine areas within Te Korowai lands and waters. They also apply where a watercraft is transported across Te Korowai lands and waters. Outside Te Korowai lands and waters, regional councils and territorial authorities control watercraft through navigation and safety bylaws and surface water activity rules.

For horse transport, see section 11.14 Ngā kararehe | Animals.

11.13 POLICIES (NGĀ WAKA I TE WHENUA, NGĀ WAKA I TE WAI | VEHICLES AND WATERCRAFT)

General vehicles
and watercraft

- 11.13.1** Liaise with vehicle and watercraft users to identify opportunities to:
 - a) be involved in conservation programmes; and
 - b) maintain the roads, tracks, routes or waterways they are permitted to use.
 - 11.13.2** May allow vehicles and watercraft on Te Korowai lands and waters outside the areas provided for in Table 11.13.1 ('Motor vehicle and bike access on roads and tracks') where necessary for:
 - a) cultural activities by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in accordance with tikanga Māori;
 - b) authorised farming operations, restoration activities, and research and monitoring activities; or
 - c) the construction, operation and/or maintenance of authorised facilities and utilities.
 - 11.13.3** Identify on the Te Papa Atawhai website, signs and other information:
 - a) where people can take and use vehicles and watercraft on Te Korowai lands and waters; and
 - b) what conditions apply to the taking and using of such vehicles and watercraft, including where vehicles are restricted to identified tracks or roads, and the requirement to remain on the track or road formation at all times.
 - 11.13.4** Monitor the effects of vehicles and watercraft on natural, historic and cultural values, and on other recreational users.
 - 11.13.5** Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and consult user groups to review and adjust vehicle and watercraft use where monitoring shows that adverse effects are occurring or where priorities change for the relevant road, track or area.
 - 11.13.6** Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and consult user groups, adjoining landowners, tramping clubs, other interested parties including conservation groups, and the public, when considering new opportunities for the use of vehicles and watercraft on Te Korowai lands and waters.
-

Continued on next page

- 11.13.7** Consider new opportunities for the use of vehicles and watercraft on Te Korowai lands and waters only where:
- a) the opportunity is consistent with the:
 - (i) purpose for which the land is held;
 - (ii) outcome and policies for the relevant Place; and
 - (iii) visitor management zones shown in the maps in Volume III and described in Appendix 11 in Volume II;
 - b) adverse effects, including cumulative adverse effects, on natural, historic or cultural values and any existing road, track, route or waterway can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;
 - c) adverse effects, including cumulative adverse effects, on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;
 - d) measures, such as trial periods, restricted seasons, daylight use only limitations, number limits and one-way flow, can be applied, if necessary;
 - e) facilities, including toilets and those associated with overnight use, can be provided, if necessary;
 - f) fire and biosecurity risks (including the introduction or spread of pest plants and pathogens) can be avoided or carefully managed;
 - g) any access arrangements with landowners (where applicable) are resolved;
 - h) ongoing demand, feasibility and financial viability have been proven (where applicable);
 - i) the effects of climate change can be avoided, remedied or mitigated in accordance with Policies 10.4.2.2 and 11.1.12;
 - j) consistency with relevant Te Papa Atawhai standards for track development has been demonstrated (where applicable); and
 - k) the ongoing management implications of providing vehicle and watercraft access, such as maintenance costs, are taken into account.

Continued on next page

Motor vehicles	11.13.8 Should allow independent motor vehicle use and should grant motor vehicle related concessions on the roads within Te Korowai lands and waters as identified in Table 11.13.1, and subject to any criteria in that table, and as allowed for in Policies 11.13.9 and 11.13.10. 11.13.9 Should allow independent motor vehicle parking and should grant motor vehicle parking related concessions at designated locations as identified: a) on the Te Papa Atawhai website; and/or b) in an official notice. 11.13.10 May consider concessions for the development of new motor vehicle opportunities where: a) identified as suitable through the investigation process in Policies 11.13.6 and 11.13.7; and b) tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and Te Papa Atawhai consider it necessary to replace an existing opportunity. 11.13.11 Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), local authorities, NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi, the New Zealand Police, Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Management Board and other relevant agencies to manage motor vehicle use on beaches, dunes, lake shores and riverbeds to protect conservation values.
Bikes	11.13.12 Should allow independent biking and should grant biking-related concessions only: a) on the tracks, roads or other areas identified in Table 11.13.1; or b) where vehicle access is provided for in Part Two – Places; or c) on tracks, roads or other approved areas in accordance with the application of Policy 11.13.7. 11.13.13 May consider concessions for the development of new biking opportunities where identified as suitable through the investigation process outlined in Policies 11.13.6 and 11.13.7.
Watercraft	11.13.14 Should not allow the use of motorised watercraft on Te Korowai lands and waters except in accordance with Policy 11.13.5. 11.13.15 May restrict non-powered watercraft use on and in Te Korowai lands and waters where watercraft use could cause adverse effects to Te Korowai lands and waters or wildlife. 11.13.16 Work with local authorities to manage watercraft use on and in waters adjacent to Te Korowai lands and waters in an integrated manner, consistent with Kaupapa Tuku Iho.

Table 11.13.1: Motor vehicle and bike access on roads and tracks

PLACE	CONSERVATION UNIT	ROAD	MOTORISED VEHICLES	BIKES	CRITERIA
Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki	Te Paki Recreation Reserve	Cape Reinga Road (SH1)	Yes	Yes	
Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki	Te Paki Recreation Reserve	Tapotupotu Road	Yes	Yes	
Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki	Te Paki Recreation Reserve	Spirits Bay Road	Yes	Yes	
Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki	Te Paki Recreation Reserve	Kapowairua (Spirits Bay) Campground Road	Yes	Yes	
Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki	Ahipara Conservation Area	Ahipara Gumfields Reserve Road	No	Yes	
Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki	Warawara Forest (Pt Northland Conservation Park)	Warawara Forest Road	No	No	Managed in accordance with Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i te Taiao
Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki	Lake Ngātu Recreation Reserve	Lake Ngātu Track	No	Yes	

11.14 Ngā kararehe

Animals

Animals (including dogs) cannot be taken onto public conservation lands and waters unless this is consistent with legislation and provided for in a CMS or conservation management plan. This may include giving authorisation by way of signage or other such public notification.

Domestic animals and pets can have adverse effects on the natural, historic and cultural values of Te Korowai lands and waters and can detract from visitor appreciation and enjoyment. Potential effects include killing wildlife, introducing pest plants, introducing disease (such as dogs to seals), browsing indigenous vegetation, increasing erosion and conflicting with other user groups.

Te Papa Atawhai uses a permit system to control the use of dogs for recreational activities, including hunting, on Te Korowai lands and waters to protect both indigenous wildlife and people's rights of use and enjoyment.

The only people who do not require permits to take a dog onto Te Korowai lands and waters are employees of the Police, Te Papa Atawhai or Customs, a warranted officer, or a search and rescue person when carrying out official duties or training. A person who uses a certified disability assist dog, guide dog or companion dog may also take their dog onto Te Korowai lands and waters without a permit.

For everyone else, it is illegal to take a dog onto Te Korowai lands and waters without a permit unless the area is identified as an 'open dog area'. It is recognised that taking a dog onto Te Korowai lands and waters can enhance the recreational experience of the owner; however, the dog needs to be well managed to prevent adverse impacts on wildlife and other people.

A dog that is being used for hunting needs to be properly trained, under the control of its handler and authorised by a hunting permit. Hunting dogs, and farm dogs on properties adjacent to known habitat for ground-dwelling or

nesting indigenous species, should also be avian aversion trained. A permit allowing the use of dogs on Te Korowai lands and waters for hunting may be subject to conditions such as locations where access has been agreed with adjoining landowners and/or a requirement for micro-chipping and tracking collars.

New Zealand Gazette Issue No. 169, 'Controlled Dog Areas and Open Dog Areas for the Northland Conservancy' (2004) pursuant to section 26ZS of the Conservation Act 1987,⁵⁸ was established to protect wildlife that is considered vulnerable to attack or disturbance by dogs. A secondary aim was to minimise potential conflicts between dogs and other users of the land. Most lands and waters administrated in full or in part by Te Papa Atawhai in Northland are subject to this Gazette notice, including Te Korowai lands and waters. The four dog control settings outlined in the notice are:

- controlled dog areas – no access;
- controlled dog areas – entry by permit only for management and/or recreational hunting subject to conditions;
- open dog areas – entry on a lead subject to conditions; and
- open dog areas – free entry subject to conditions.

The dog control areas in this Gazette notice are to be updated to reflect the policies outlined in Te Hiku CMS.

⁵⁸ [gazette.govt.nz/notice/id/2004-In8501](https://www.gazette.govt.nz/notice/id/2004-In8501)

11.14 POLICIES (NGĀ KARAREHE | ANIMALS)

General

- 11.14.1** Liaise with dog owners and horse riders to identify opportunities to:
- a) be involved in conservation programmes; and
 - b) maintain the roads, tracks, routes or waterways that they are permitted to use.
- 11.14.2** Review dog, horse and pack animal use where evidence shows that adverse effects are occurring in consultation with relevant user groups and the community.
- 11.14.3** Identify on the Te Papa Atawhai website, signs and other information:
- a) where dogs, horses and pack animals are permitted within Te Korowai lands and waters; and
 - b) what conditions apply to animal access, including whether animals are restricted to particular tracks or roads and are required to remain on the track or road formation at all times.
- 11.14.4** Undertake consultation with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), user groups, adjoining landowners, tramping clubs, other interested parties and the public when considering new opportunities for the use of dogs, horses and pack animals within Te Korowai lands and waters.
- 11.14.5** Apply the following criteria when considering new opportunities for the use of dogs, horses and pack animals on Te Korowai lands and waters:
- a) The new opportunity is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the road, track or site is, or is proposed to be, located.
 - b) The new opportunity is consistent with the visitor management zones as shown in the maps in Volume III and described in Appendix 11 in Volume II.
 - c) Adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on the road, track or site and on the natural, historic or cultural values can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.
 - d) Adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects and conflicts) on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.
 - e) Measures, such as trial periods, restricted seasons, daylight use only limitations, number limits and one-way flow, can be applied if necessary.
 - f) Facilities, including those associated with overnight use, can be provided if necessary.

Continued on next page

		g) Fire and biosecurity risks (including the introduction or spread of pest plants and pathogens) can be avoided or carefully managed.
		h) The ongoing management implications of providing dog, horse or pack animal access (e.g. in terms of ongoing maintenance costs) are considered.
Dogs	11.14.6	Should not allow dogs to be taken onto Te Korowai lands and waters without a permit, except if provided for in Policies 11.14.7 and 11.14.8.
	11.14.7	Should allow dogs to be taken onto Te Korowai lands and waters without a permit where the person taking the dog is undertaking official activities in the capacity of: a) a Police employee; b) a warranted officer; c) an officer or employee of Te Papa Atawhai; d) a customs officer; or e) a search and rescue person.
	11.14.8	Should allow disability assist dogs, guide dogs and companion dogs to be taken onto Te Korowai lands and waters without a permit, provided that: a) the person the dog is accompanying, including a trainer, keeps the dog under control at all times; and b) the dog is currently certified with, and wears an identification tag from, a relevant disability assist dog, guide dog or companion dog organisation.
	11.14.9	If a permit is required to take a dog onto Te Korowai lands and waters, should ensure that the permit contains conditions to protect the values for which those lands and waters are held, including: a) owners or handlers keeping dogs under control at all times; b) dogs not going into, or under, public buildings, including huts; c) dogs are certified by an approved avian aversion trainer where there are ground-dwelling or ground-nesting birds; d) dogs are micro-chipped; e) owners or handlers comply with any identified access arrangements between the adjoining landowners; and f) owners or handlers follow kauri disease best practice by ensuring that any soil is removed before entering and when leaving forests containing kauri.

Continued on next page

	11.14.10 Should not allow dogs onto the Te Korowai lands and waters listed below due to the likely adverse effects on the natural values: a) Nature reserves b) Scientific reserves c) Wildlife sanctuaries d) Wāhi tapu sites 11.14.11 Educate the community about the threats that dogs can pose to conservation values. 11.14.12 Work with local authorities to ensure consistency in dog control in areas containing protected wildlife and important wildlife habitats. 11.14.13 Work with hunting clubs and Northland Fish & Game Council to encourage responsible hunting by: a) promoting the use of high-quality hunting dogs; b) promoting the use of tracking collars on pig hunting dogs; c) regularly offering avian aversion training for dogs; and d) targeting the control of pest and wild animals at the priority sites identified in Appendix 5 in Volume II.
Horses and other animals	11.14.14 Should not allow the use of horses (or pack animals) on Te Korowai lands and waters except for cultural activities by tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) in accordance with tikanga Māori and for Te Papa Atawhai management purposes. 11.14.15 Should not permit livestock, other than horses and pack animals in accordance with Policy 11.14.14, within Te Korowai lands and waters, unless under a grazing and farming concession or management agreement. 11.14.16 Should not permit any other types of animals (including pets), other than dogs in accordance with Policies 11.14.6–11.14.13, on Te Korowai lands and waters.



Cody, a conservation dog. Photo: Craig Bullock

11.15 Ngā kararehe mohoao

Wild and game animals

Wild animals are goats, deer and pigs that are not in captivity, including the whole or any part of the carcass. They are managed under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977,⁵⁹ and the Minister of Conservation has responsibility for the granting of:

- concessions for commercial wild animal recovery operations involving aircraft (issued under the Conservation Act 1987);
- permits for commercial and recreational hunting; and
- permits for holding wild animals in captivity, safari parks or deer farms.

The Minister is required to consider Te Hiku CMS when deciding on applications for commercial wild animal recovery activities on Te Korowai lands and waters. Any requirements or regulations promulgated under the Game Animal Council Act 2013⁶⁰ are also relevant, and other concessions may also be required under the Conservation Act 1987 (e.g. aircraft access for recreational hunting).

Game animals are deer and wild pigs, including the whole or any part of the carcass, and can also be managed under the Game Animal Council Act 2013. Under that Act, the Minister of Hunting and Fishing may designate any species of game animal in a specified area on public conservation land to be a 'herd of special interest' if the required criteria are met. A herd management plan is developed for each herd of special interest, setting out the objectives and strategies for the management of the herd to achieve the expected benefits that will be gained from managing the animals for hunting purposes. As at the time of Te Hiku CMS becoming operative, no herds of special interest were gazetted within *Te Korowai*.

The New Zealand Game Animal Council has a range of functions that are associated with the hunting of game animals, and Te Papa Atawhai works with the Council to effectively manage game animals on Te Korowai lands and waters.

11.15 NGĀ KARAREHE MOHOAO POLICIES (WILD AND GAME ANIMALS)

11.15.1 Should grant concessions for deer, pig and goat carcass recovery and deer live capture on Te Korowai lands and waters only:

- a) in accordance with the Wild Animal Control Act 1977; and
- b) where the frequency, timing and location of the activity can be managed.

11.15.2 Work with the New Zealand Game Animal Council and others to facilitate the hunting of game animals on Te Korowai lands and waters.

⁵⁹ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1977/0111/latest/DLM16623.html

⁶⁰ legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2013/0098/latest/DLM4105024.html

11.16 Ngā hōiho me ngā kau mohoao

Wild horses and cattle

Te Korowai has a history of horses and cattle being released into the wild. Over time, these animals have formed herds that wander and graze the land. If these animals get into *Te Korowai* lands and waters, they can cause significant damage to native species and ecosystems by eating protected flora and spreading weeds. To prevent this damage, *Te Papa Atawhai* and tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and others need to work together to help the community understand the importance of protecting *Te Korowai* lands and waters from these animals.

11.16 POLICIES (NGĀ HŌIHO ME NGĀ KAU MOHOAO | WILD HORSES AND CATTLE)

- 11.16.1** Work with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi), user groups and adjoining landowners to remove wild horses and wild cattle from *Te Korowai* lands and waters and prevent reincursions.
-



Female miromiro/North Island tomtit (*Petroica macrocephala toitoi*),
Warawara Forest. Photo: Alannah Lett



WAHANGA TUAWHA

Ngā tohu whakatutuki

PART FOUR

Signs of successful implementation

12. Te whakatinana, te aroturuki me te pūrongo Implementation, monitoring and reporting

This section provides a framework through which Te Papa Atawhai will implement Te Hiku CMS and review the progress being made towards achieving the desired outcomes and objectives within it.

Te Papa Atawhai is not solely responsible for all implementation, monitoring and reporting:

- In recognition of their role over Te Korowai lands and waters, Te Hiku iwi have roles in relation to business planning for implementing Te Hiku CMS, delivering conservation-related projects, managing specific areas, and monitoring the implementation and effectiveness of Te Hiku CMS to identify whether there is a need to review it.
- Te Hiku Conservation Board has a role in monitoring progress in implementing Te Hiku CMS and considering whether a review of the CMS would be desirable. The Board in turn reports annually to the New Zealand Conservation Authority.

Te Hiku CMS is implemented by:

- applying business planning processes where decisions are made about priorities and resourcing for Te Papa Atawhai activities;
- making decisions on concessions and other authorisations; and
- advocating for conservation outcomes.

As identified above, while Te Papa Atawhai holds primary responsibility for implementing Te Hiku CMS (including monitoring and reporting), Te Papa Atawhai intends, and is on occasion required, to work with iwi and others to do this. Some objectives and policies in the CMS state where specific groups will be involved.

Te Papa Atawhai will use Te Hiku CMS to inform *Te Korowai* annual business planning, which is used to plan ahead for the work Te Papa Atawhai and others will do at a local level. This planning sets the priorities for actions for the next financial year to achieve the long-term outcomes and objectives in Te Hiku CMS.

The Conservation General Policy 2005, Conservation Act 1987 and Te Hiku Claims Settlement Acts provide direction on the monitoring, reporting and review of Te Hiku CMS. The Conservation General Policy 2005 requires Te Hiku CMS to include ‘major milestones towards planned outcomes’ and for Te Papa Atawhai to report to the Board at least annually on progress made towards achieving outcomes and objectives in the CMS. The milestones set out in sections 9 and 10.5 of this CMS provide the basis for this reporting.

As Te Hiku iwi and Te Papa Atawhai have the ability under Te Hiku settlements to initiate a review of Te Hiku CMS after consultation with the Board,⁶¹ it is important that iwi receive the same or similar reports as the Board. The manner in which this monitoring and reporting is undertaken may evolve over time and, thus, Policy 12.6 provides for reporting requirements to change over time with agreement.

The Board may expand this monitoring and reporting framework during the life of Te Hiku CMS, in conjunction with tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi) and conservation stakeholders.

Monitoring the effects of recreation, other activities and the way in which Te Hiku CMS is being implemented on the natural, historic and cultural values and other users of Te Korowai lands and waters is important in determining

⁶¹ For example, see Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015, section 110. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2015/79/en/latest/#DLM6577802

whether the desired outcomes in the CMS are being achieved or whether further management action is required. Compliance is one of a suite of management actions that can be undertaken.

Te Hiku CMS will have effect from the time of its approval by the New Zealand Conservation Authority until such time as it is formally amended or reviewed in full or in part under section 17H or 17I of the Conservation Act 1987.⁶²

12 POLICIES (TE WHAKATINANA, TE AROTURUKI ME TE PŪRONGORONGO | IMPLEMENTATION, MONITORING AND REPORTING)

- 12.1** Use the outcomes, objectives and policies in the Te Hiku CMS to guide Te Papa Atawhai business planning.
- 12.2** Must work with Te Hiku iwi to:
- a) develop annual business and work plans;
 - b) identify opportunities to work together in implementing Te Hiku CMS and in developing programmes to monitor the effectiveness of actions taken; and
 - c) identify opportunities to use mātauranga Māori in monitoring and reporting.
- 12.3** Support Te Hiku iwi to undertake conservation projects that are consistent with outcomes, objectives and policies in Te Hiku CMS.
- 12.4** Adopt the milestones in sections 9 and 10.5 to measure progress in achieving the outcomes, objectives and policies in Te Hiku CMS.
- 12.5** Report, at least annually, to Te Hiku o Te Ika Conservation Board and Te Hiku iwi on progress in achieving outcomes and objectives in Te Hiku CMS using the milestones in sections 9 and 10.5.
- 12.6** May, with the agreement of Te Hiku iwi and Te Hiku o Te Ika Conservation Board, expand the monitoring and reporting framework in Policy 12.5 to include:
- a) additional milestones or monitoring indicators;
 - b) reasons for delays or failures in implementation or achievement;
 - c) the nature and level of compliance/non-compliance with the provisions of Te Hiku CMS;
 - d) an analysis of concession and statutory approval activity and activity monitoring;
 - e) recommendations for improving the management of Te Korowai lands and waters; and
 - f) the use of mātauranga Māori in the monitoring and reporting process.
-

Continued on next page

⁶² legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1987/0065/latest/DLM104613.html

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 12.7 | Seek the agreement of Te Hiku o Te Ika Conservation Board when Te Hiku iwi and Te Papa Atawhai consider that an amendment or review of Te Hiku CMS is necessary. |
| 12.8 | Monitor the effects (including cumulative effects) of recreation and other activities on the natural, historic and cultural values and other users on Te Korowai lands and waters. |
| 12.9 | Carry out compliance and enforcement activities in accordance with the Conservation Act 1987 and any other relevant Acts, regulations and bylaws. |
-

Kupu whakamārama

Glossary

Te Aka Māori Dictionary is used as a reference for the interpretation of Te Hiku Conservation Management Strategy (Te Hiku CMS). Te Aka has encyclopaedic entries, including the names of plants and animals (especially native and endemic species), stars, planets and heavenly bodies, and important Māori people, key ancestors of traditional narratives, tribal groups and ancestral canoes. Māori names for institutions, country names, place names and other proper names are also provided.

TE REO	ENGLISH
ahikāroa	continuing use and occupation
ana	burial cave
Aotearoa	New Zealand
aroa	love
atua	gods
awa	river, stream
ea	to be satisfied, settled, repaid
hapū	kinship group, clan, tribe, subtribe
hīkoi	step, march, hike, trek, tramp, trip, journey
iwi	extended kinship group, tribe, nation, people, nationality, race
kai	food, meal
kāinga	home, address, residence, village, settlement, habitation, habitat, dwelling
kāinga noho	address, place where one lives
kaitiaki	trustee, minder, guard, custodian, guardian, caregiver, keeper, steward
kaitiakitanga	exercising guardianship, deriving from mana whenua, over natural resources, inherited taonga and other forms of wealth, and communities, including Māori and other distinctive cultural groups
Kaupapa Tuku Iho	inherited values

Continued on next page

Glossary continued

kawenata	covenants
ki uta ki tai	from the mountains to the sea
kiore	<i>Rattus exulans</i> [Also used for the larger brown Norway rat or pouhawaiki (<i>Rattus norvegicus</i>), the black ship rat (<i>Rattus rattus</i>) and the house mouse (<i>Mus musculus</i>).]
kōrero	speech, narrative, story, news, account, discussion, conversation, discourse, statement, information
kotahitanga	pursuing a unity of purpose and direction where all are able and encouraged to contribute
mahinga kai	garden, cultivation, food-gathering place
mana	acknowledging the mana and autonomy of each iwi to operate within their respective rohe in accordance with mana whenua, mana tūpuna, mana moana and manaakitanga [Iwi authorities show commitment to developing strategies regarding shared interests.]
mana moana	authority over the sea and lakes
mana tūpuna	authority through descent
mana whenua / mana o te whenua	territorial rights, power from the land, authority over land or territory, jurisdiction over land or territory
manaakitanga	demonstrating behaviour and activities that are mana enhancing towards others, including generosity, care, respect and reciprocity
manuhiri	visitor, guest
marae	the open area in front of the wharenui, where formal greetings and discussions take place [Often also used to include the complex of buildings around the marae.]
mātauranga	knowledge, wisdom, understanding, skill
mātauranga Māori	Māori knowledge – the body of knowledge originating from Māori ancestors, including the Māori world view and perspectives, Māori creativity, and cultural practices
maunga	mountain, mount, peak
mauri	life principle, life force, vital essence, special nature
moana	sea, ocean, large lake
mokopuna	descendant
motu	island

Continued on next page

Glossary continued

ngā kōrero tuku iho	history, stories of the past, traditions, oral tradition
Ngā Whenua Rāhui	the protection of all indigenous natural areas
ngahere	bush, forest
noa	to be free from the extensions of tapu, ordinary, unrestricted, void
nohoanga	dwelling place, abode, encampment
pā	fortified village, fort, stockade
papakāinga	original home, home base, village, communal Māori land
Papatūānuku	Earth, Earth mother and wife of Ranginui [All living things originate from Papatūānuku and Ranginui.]
pou	pole, pillar
pōwhiri	formal welcoming ceremony on a marae
pūkengatanga	processing knowledge creation, dissemination and maintenance that leads to scholarship and contributes to the mātauranga continuum of te kākano i ruia mai i Rangiātea
puna	spring (of water), well, pool
rāhui	to put in place a temporary ritual prohibition, closed season, ban, reserve [Traditionally, a rāhui was placed on an area, resource or stretch of water as a conservation measure or as a means of social and political control for a variety of reasons.]
rangatira	chief (male or female), chieftain, chieftainess, master, mistress, boss, supervisor, employer, landlord, owner, proprietor
rangatiratanga	reflecting chiefly roles and attributes, seen as ‘walking the talk’ and showing integrity, humility and honesty
rāua	they, them (two people)
rohe	boundary, district, region, territory, area, border (of land)
rongōa	remedy, medicine
rōpū tuku iho	inherited whānau, hapū and iwi groupings
rūnanga	council, tribal council, assembly, board, boardroom, iwi authority – assemblies called to discuss issues of concern to iwi or the community
taiao	world, Earth, natural world, environment, nature, country

Continued on next page

taitamariki	youth, teenagers, young person (of either sex), adolescent
tamariki	children [Normally used only in the plural.]
tangata	people, men, persons, human beings
tangata whenua (whānau, hapū, iwi)	local people, hosts, indigenous people – people born of the whenua [When used in objectives, outcomes, policies or milestones, it means the representatives of the iwi that hold mana whenua for the whenua in question. Where there are Treaty settlements enacted for an iwi, the area that the iwi holds mana whenua for is identified with their settlement. The appropriate people to work with Te Papa Atawhai in a particular situation are defined by the tikanga of each iwi.]
taniwha	water spirit, monster, dangerous water creature, powerful creature, chief, powerful leader [Taniwha take many forms, from logs to reptiles and whales, and often live in lakes, rivers or the sea. They are often regarded as guardians by the people who live in their territory but may also have a malign influence on human beings.]
taonga	treasure, anything prized [Applied to anything considered to be of value, including socially or culturally valuable objects, resources, phenomena, ideas and techniques.]
taonga katoa	all treasures
taonga tuku iho	heirloom, something handed down, cultural property, heritage
tapu	restriction, prohibition – a supernatural condition [A person, place or thing is dedicated to an atua and is thus removed from the sphere of the profane and put into the sphere of the sacred; it is untouchable, no longer to be put to common use.]
tātai hono	analysing and synthesising fundamental connectivity (as in genealogy) that highlights the balancing of inter-relationships between people, their heritage and the world around them; acknowledging the element of whakautu and the reciprocal responsibilities that evolve from it
te ao Māori	the Māori world view
Te Ara Wairua	the spirits' pathway
te kākano i ruia mai i Rangiātea	I am a seed sown from Rangiātea [This metaphorical 'seed' represents growth, development and self-realisation; this growth and development is founded in the attainment of higher learning.]

Continued on next page

Glossary continued

Te Papa Atawhai	the Department of Conservation
te reo	the Māori language
Te Reo Māori	using te reo to articulate Māori understanding of the world, just as other cultural groups use their languages to do this [This inherited taonga is essential to the identity and survival of Māori as a people and comes from both the whenua and te taiao.]
te taiao	the environment
Te Tiriti o Waitangi	the Treaty of Waitangi
tikanga	customary values and practices [Due to the varied and evolving nature of tikanga for Te Hiku iwi, descriptions of tikanga for certain sites will be covered within the relationship agreements between each iwi and Te Papa Atawhai. These relationships agreements will be reviewed regularly.]
tino rangatiratanga	self-determination, sovereignty, autonomy, self-government, domination, rule, control, power
tohu/tohutohu	sign, mark, symbol, emblem, token, qualification, cue, symptom, proof, directions, company, landmark, distinguishing feature, signature
Tohu Whenua	landmark
tōrere	darling, beloved, true love, loved one; in the context of Te Hiku CMS, ‘a place set aside for deceased loved ones’
tūpuna	ancestral rights
ūkaipōtanga	caring and nurturing, a context where Māori and others can contribute in ways that strengthen a sense of fulfilment and stimulation
urupā	burial ground
utu	to repay, pay, respond, avenge, reply, answer
wāhi pakanga	battle site
wāhi taonga	site of significance
wāhi tapu	sacred place, sacred site – a place subject to long-term ritual restrictions on access or use (e.g. a burial ground, a battle site or a place where tapu objects were placed)
wāhi waka	landing place
wāhi whakahirahira	place of grandeur, influence, prominence, greatness, importance, reputation, standing, eminence, significance
waiora	health, soundness
wairua	spirit, soul

Continued on next page

wairuatanga	acknowledging and understanding the existence of mauri and a spiritual dimension to life that requires regular attention and nourishment
waka	canoe
waka ama	outrigger canoeing
wānanga	seminar, conference, forum, educational seminar
whaikōrero	oratory, oration, formal speech-making, address, speech – formal speeches usually made by men during a pōwhiri and other gatherings
whakapapa	genealogy, genealogical table, lineage, descent [Reciting whakapapa was, and is, an important skill and reflected the importance of genealogies in Māori society in terms of leadership, land and fishing rights, kinship, and status.]
whakataukī	proverb, significant saying, formulaic saying, cryptic saying, aphorism
whakautu	answer, response, reply, riposte
whānau	extended family, family group; a familiar term of address to several people – the primary economic unit of traditional Māori society
whanaungatanga	expressing relationships that are built on common ancestry and feature interdependence and reciprocal obligations [These relationships provide support and guidance to rūpū tuku iho (whānau, hapū and iwi), as well as other groups of people by whom genealogy is highly regarded.]
wharehūi	meeting house, large house – main building of a marae
whenua	land, country, nation, state, ground, territory or domain [Often used in the plural in relation to land.]
whenua ngahere	intended to give effect to a new relationship between Te Iwi o Te Rarawa, the Minister of Conservation and Te Papa Atawhai by acknowledging that the mana whenua are hapū and iwi of Te Rarawa [Also used in reference to forested lands.]

Glossary – interpretation

Any definitions from legislation or the Conservation General Policy 2005 are referenced in black below and not repeated in full.

All Acts are available online at legislation.govt.nz.

<i>actively conserved historic site</i>	A historically significant site that is managed by Te Papa Atawhai to preserve and maintain its historic features.
<i>activity</i> (Conservation Act 1987, section 2)	
<i>aircraft</i> (Civil Aviation Act 1990, section 2)	Includes, but is not limited to, the following types of aircraft: powered and non-powered; recreational and commercial; fixed-wing and rotary-wing; manned aircraft and remotely piloted aircraft systems; and any other aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time. See also <i>aircraft, non-powered</i> ; <i>aircraft, powered</i> ; and <i>aircraft, remotely piloted</i> .
<i>aircraft, non-powered</i>	Any machine not driven by a powered device that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reaction of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the Earth. Includes non-powered gliders, non-powered hang gliders, non-powered paragliders, parachutes, balloons, and any other non-powered aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.
<i>aircraft, powered</i>	Means any power-driven aircraft. Includes aeroplanes, helicopters, microlights and powered gliders. Excludes any aircraft covered by the definition of ‘remotely piloted’.
<i>aircraft, remotely piloted</i>	An unmanned aircraft that is piloted from a remote station and: a) includes a radio-controlled model aircraft; but b) does not include a control line model aircraft or a free-flight model aircraft; or as regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time. Commonly referred to as a drone.
<i>airstrip</i>	Any specified area of Te Korowai land that is specifically maintained for the landing and take-off of fixed-wing aircraft and may also be used by rotary-wing aircraft. It does not include a certified aerodrome as defined by the Conservation Act 1987 or an airport as defined by the Airport Authorities Act 1966.

Continued on next page

animal (Reserves Act 1977, section 2; National Parks Act 1980, section 2; Conservation Act 1987, section 2)	
archaeological site (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, section 6)	
at risk (species)	Taxa that do not meet the criteria for any of the ‘threatened’ species categories but are declining (although buffered by a large total population size and/or a slow decline rate), biologically scarce, recovering from a previously threatened status or survive only in relict populations (New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual 2008 ⁶³).
authorisation (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
authorised	Approved in a statutory process.
Backcountry destination	A destination that provides for more challenging adventures, including popular walks and tramps, within the body of a large-scale natural setting.
bike	A pedal cycle that can be used on or off road, including: a) bicycles and mountain bikes without any form of mechanical or electric propulsion; b) electric power-assisted pedal cycles (e-bikes); and c) cycles, e-bikes and mountain bikes that meet the definition of a mobility device under the Land Transport Act 1998. This definition excludes bikes classified as motor vehicles under the Land Transport Act 1998.
biodiversity (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
biodiversity corridor	An area of vegetation that provides a connection and potentially allows the movement of plants and animals between two habitats. Ecological corridors do not have to be linear and/or physically connected, just close enough so that plants and animals can disperse along them.
bioregion	A biogeographic region, an area constituting a natural ecological community with characteristic flora, fauna and environmental conditions and bounded by natural rather than artificial borders.
biosecurity (Conservation General Policy 2005)	Te Papa Atawhai has functions that it performs under the Biosecurity Act 1993.
building (Conservation General Policy 2005)	

Continued on next page

⁶³ doc.govt.nz/nztcs-2008

bylaw	A rule made by the Minister of Conservation under section 56 of the National Parks Act 1980 or section 106 of the Reserves Act 1977. Bylaws may apply to national parks and reserves, whereas regulations may apply to reserves and conservation areas.
climate change	A change in climate that is attributed directly or indirectly to human activity altering the composition of the global atmosphere (United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change: Article 1 ⁶⁴).
co-governance	[The following definition applies to Te Hiku CMS and will evolve over time as our enduring relationships evolve.] Co-governance in the eyes of Te Hiku iwi is a spectrum, the foundation of which is a collaborative process of decision making and problem solving, involving representatives of each iwi and Te Papa Atawhai in the management and governance of Te Korowai lands and waters in accordance with Te Hiku CMS. Examples of co-governance arrangements identified as Korowai redress in Te Hiku Claims Settlement Acts include the: • establishment of Te Hiku o Te Ika Conservation Board with an equal number of members representing Te Hiku iwi and the community; • development of this CMS by representatives of Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri, NgāiTakoto, Te Rarawa and the Crown, guided by the relationship agreement and conservation principles; • development and implementation of the customary materials plan, wāhi tapu framework and relationship agreement; • joint decision making in Te Rerenga Wairua Reserve (Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri, NgāiTakoto); • Warawara Whenua Ngāhere i te Taiao agreement (Te Rarawa hapū); and • the decision-making framework.
collaborate	Work together to determine the issues and problems, and develop solutions together that are reflected in proposals.
companion dog	A dog certified by an organisation authorised under Schedule 5 of the Dog Control Act 1996 as being a companion dog or a dog under training as a companion dog.

Continued on next page

64 unfccc.int/resource/ccsites/zimbab/conven/text/art01.htm

concession	A lease, licence, permit or easement that is granted under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987, section 49 of the National Parks Act 1980, section 59A of the Reserves Act 1977, section 22 of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 or section 14AA of the Wildlife Act 1953, or any activity authorised by the concession document.
concessionaire	A person granted a concession by the Minister of Conservation for a lease, licence, permit or easement.
conservation (Conservation Act 1987, section 2)	
conservation board	Conservation boards are established under section 6L of the Conservation Act 1987. Their primary functions and powers are set out in sections 6M and 6N of the Conservation Act 1987 and section 30 of the National Parks Act 1980. Their functions include overseeing the preparation of CMSs and national park management plans for their areas, approving conservation management plans (e.g. for conservation parks), and advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority and Director-General of Te Papa Atawhai on conservation matters of importance in their area. They also have an important conservation advocacy role. The relevant conservation board for Te Hiku CMS is Te Hiku o Te Ika Conservation Board.
Conservation General Policy	A policy prepared under section 17C of the Conservation Act 1987 to provide unified policy for the implementation of the Conservation Act 1987, Wildlife Act 1953, Marine Reserves Act 1971, Reserves Act 1977, Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. It provides guidance for the administration and management of all lands and waters and all natural and historic resources managed for the purposes of those Acts, excluding reserves administered by other agencies under the Reserves Act 1977. It also provides guidance for consistent management planning for the wide range of places and resources administered or managed by Te Papa Atawhai, including the preparation of CMSs, conservation management plans and sports fish management plans.
conservation legislation	A collective term that applies to the statutes administered by Te Papa Atawhai, including the Conservation Act 1987 (and the legislation listed in Schedule 1 of that Act), the Reserves Act 1977, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and the National Parks Act 1980.
conservation management	Any activity that is carried out by the Minister of Conservation or Director-General of Te Papa Atawhai (and their contractors and authorised agents) in the exercising of his or her functions, duties or powers under conservation legislation.

Continued on next page

conservation management plan (Conservation Act 1987, section 17E)	
conservation management strategy (CMS) (Conservation Act 1987, section 17D)	
conservation stakeholders	For the purposes of Te Hiku CMS, includes regional councils, territorial authorities, private landowners, conservation, recreation and community groups, and the public.
cultural (General Policy for National Parks 2005)	
customary materials plan	A plan prepared under the Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui Treaty Claims Settlement Acts that covers: a) the customary taking of plant materials from Te Korowai lands and waters; and b) the possession of dead protected animals found within <i>Te Korowai</i> . The content and development of this plan is outlined within the settlement legislation. ⁶⁵
customary use (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
destination management	A programme aimed at increasing the number of people enjoying public conservation lands and waters. It focuses Te Papa Atawhai on five main areas for success: understanding what people want; delivering quality experiences; optimising resources; working with others; and improving marketing and promotion. Destinations are geographical areas and/or groups of facilities that are the focus of a single typical visitor trip and are categorised into 'Icon', 'Gateway', 'Local treasure' and 'Backcountry' destinations. Destination management is the coordinated management of all the elements that make up a destination, including its values, attractions, people, infrastructure, access and how it is marketed.
Director-General	The Director-General of Te Papa Atawhai.
disability assist dog (Dog Control Act 1996, section 2)	
drone	Refer to <i>aircraft, remotely piloted</i> .
ecosystem (Conservation General Policy 2005)	An 'indigenous ecosystem' is composed of indigenous species.

Continued on next page

⁶⁵ Set out in section 119 and Part 3, Schedule 4 of the Te Rarawa Claims Settlement Act 2015; section 105 and Part 3, Schedule 3 of the Ngāti Kuri Claims Settlement Act 2015; section 102 and Part 3, Schedule 3 of the Ngāi Takoto Claims Settlement Act 2016; and section 107 and Part 3, Schedule 3 of the Te Aupōuri Claims Settlement Act 2015.

ecosystem services (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
effect (Conservation Act 1987, section 2; and Resource Management Act 1991, section 3)	
electric power-assisted pedal cycle (e-bike)	A pedal cycle to which one or more auxiliary electric propulsion motors are attached with a combined maximum power output of 300 W or less.
encampment (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
endemic (General Policy for National Parks 2005)	
exceptional circumstances	Circumstances well outside the normal range. They do not have to be unique or rare, but they do need to be truly an exception rather than circumstances that are regularly or often encountered.
facilities (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
fish (Fisheries Act 1996, section 2)	
Fish & Game Council (Conservation Act 1987, section 26Q(1))	
fishery (Conservation Act 1987, section 2)	
fixed anchor	A device, such as a bolt or piton, placed permanently into rock to facilitate climbing and caving activities.
freshwater fish (Conservation Act 1987, section 2)	
game (Wildlife Act 1953, section 2)	
game animal (Game Animal Council Act 2013, section 4)	
Gateway destination	A destination that helps introduce New Zealanders to the outdoors and allows them to learn about conservation. These destinations may provide for a diverse range of activities and include many traditional camping and tramping destinations.
General Policy for National Parks	A policy prepared under section 44 of the National Parks Act 1980 to provide unified policy for the implementation of that Act.
guide dog	A dog certified by Blind Low Vision NZ as being a guide dog or a dog under training as a guide dog.

Continued on next page

habitat (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
historic and cultural heritage (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
historic place (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, section 6)	
hover	Aircraft flight at a constant height and position over a surface.
Icon destination	A high-profile, popular destination that underpins national and international tourism and provides memorable visitor experiences in Aotearoa.
indigenous (species)	Plants and animals that have established in Aotearoa without the assistance of human beings, vehicles or aircraft. This includes species that are unique to Aotearoa, as well as those that may be found elsewhere in the world. The words ‘indigenous’ and ‘native’ have the same meaning in Te Hiku CMS.
integrated conservation management (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
International Council on Monuments and Sites New Zealand Charter / Te Pūmanawa o ICOMOS o Aotearoa Hei Tiaki i Ngā Taonga Whenua Heke Iho o Nehe	A set of guidelines on cultural heritage conservation produced by ICOMOS New Zealand. The New Zealand Charter is widely used in the Aotearoa heritage sector and forms a recognised benchmark for conservation standards and practice. It is used by central government ministries and departments, by local bodies in district plans and heritage management, and by practitioners as guiding principles.
interpretation	Conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of natural, historic or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media in a way that stimulates interest in, an increased understanding of and support for conservation.
intrinsic value (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
landscape-scale	A term commonly used to refer to action that covers a large spatial scale, usually addressing a range of ecosystem processes, conservation objectives and land uses.
livestock (Conservation Act 1987, section 2)	
Local treasure destination	A locally important, vehicle-accessible location that provides recreational opportunities for, and grows connections with, nearby communities.

Continued on next page

marine mammal (Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, section 2)	
marine protected area (Conservation General Policy 2005)	Includes marine reserves.
marine reserve (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
milestone	A specific action that is a measurable step towards achieving an objective or outcome.
mining (Crown Minerals Act 1991, section 2)	
motor vehicle (includes motorised vehicle) (Land Transport Act 1998, section 2)	Note: Any motor vehicle (which includes trail and quad bikes) taken onto Te Korowai lands and waters must be registered and/or licensed where it is required to be registered and/or licensed under the Land Transport Act 1998.
motorised watercraft	A vessel or other watercraft that: a) is used on or in water; and b) is not powered solely by hand, sail or a combination of hand and sail.
native (species)	See <i>indigenous (species)</i> .
natural (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
natural resources (Conservation Act 1987, section 2)	
non-motorised watercraft	A vessel or other watercraft that: a) is used on or in water; and b) is powered solely by hand, sail or a combination of hand and sail.
official notice	Publicly displayed notice signed off by Te Papa Atawhai or the managing body of the reserve containing instructions or directions for conduct within a site on Te Korowai lands and waters.
outcome (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
participation (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
partnership (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
pest (Conservation General Policy 2005)	

Continued on next page

Place (Conservation General Policy 2005)	For the purposes of Te Hiku CMS, Places include: • Ngā Moutere O, Ngā Moutere Ki The Islands; • Ngā Onepū O, Ngā Onepū Ki The Dunes; • Ngā Wai O, Ngā Wai Ki The Waters; and • Ngā Ngahere O, Ngā Ngahere Ki The Forests.
post-settlement governance entity (PSGE)	A post-settlement governance entity needs to be set up before a Treaty settlement becomes final and is made law. The group will represent the claimant group after the settlement is complete and will decide how to manage the redress package for the benefit of everyone.
preservation (Conservation Act 1987, section 2)	
priority ecosystem unit	An ecosystem unit that has been identified through Te Papa Atawhai natural heritage prioritisation processes as being one of the most effective locations to work in to ensure that a representative range of ecosystems is protected.
private accommodation (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
protected area (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
protection (Conservation Act 1987, section 2)	
public conservation lands and waters	Lands and waters administered by Te Papa Atawhai for their respective legislative purpose, including the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources of those areas covered by Te Hiku CMS. Reserves administered by other agencies are not included in this definition. Note: These are referred to as Te Korowai lands and waters in Te Hiku CMS.
rare species	Species classified as Threatened or At Risk under the New Zealand Threat Classification System, species that are locally or regionally endemic, and species that are in some other way important to the ecosystems occurring within <i>Te Korowai</i> .
regional council (Local Government Act 2002, section 5(1))	The regional council for Te Hiku o Te Ika-a-Māui is Northland Regional Council.

Continued on next page

regulation (conservation)	A rule made by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, under the relevant section of the conservation legislation.
related facilities	Any structure or piece of equipment that is used in conjunction or association with accommodation. Examples include garages, outhouses and outdoor showers.
relationship agreement (conservation)	An agreement that outlines how Te Papa Atawhai will work and engage with a PSGE.
remotely piloted aircraft	See <i>aircraft, remotely piloted</i> .
reserve (Reserves Act 1977, section 2)	Includes recreation, historic, scenic, nature, scientific, government purpose and local purpose reserves.
restoration (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
road (Conservation General Policy 2005)	A road may or may not pass over a defined legal road.
site (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
species (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
sports fish (Conservation General Policy 2005)	
structure (Resource Management Act 1991, section 2)	
Te Hiku iwi	The term ‘Te Hiku o Te Ika iwi’ has been used to reflect the wording of the Treaty Claims Settlement Acts of Te Rarawa, NgāiTakoto, Te Aupōuri and Ngāti Kuri. The Treaty Claims Settlement Acts provide for a review of Te Hiku CMS in relation to the Ngāti Kahu area of interest with the agreement of the Ngāti Kahu governance entity. We recognise that outside this CMS, the term Te Hiku iwi reflects whakapapa of the five iwi within Te Hiku: Te Rarawa, Ngāti Kahu, NgāiTakoto, Te Aupōuri and Ngāti Kuri.
Te Pūmanawa o ICOMOS o Aotearoa Hei Tiaki i Ngā Taonga Whenua Heke Iho o Nehe	Refer to <i>International Council on Monuments and Sites New Zealand Charter</i> .
territorial authority (Local Government Act 2002, section 5(1))	A territorial authority is defined under the Local Government Act 2002 as a city, council or district council. The territorial authority in <i>Te Korowai</i> is Far North District Council.

Continued on next page

<i>threatened (species)</i>	Includes all taxa categorised as Threatened – Nationally Critical, Threatened – Nationally Endangered or Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable under the New Zealand Threat Classification System.
<i>under control (dogs)</i>	Dogs that are: a) not causing a nuisance or danger to: (i) people; or (ii) any indigenous fauna; and b) able to respond immediately and appropriately to controls, including a leash, voice commands, hand signals or whistles.
<i>utilities</i>	Structures and infrastructure that provide an essential public service, including but not limited to telecommunications, energy generation transmission and distribution, sewerage, water supply and flood control, oil and gas, roads and airstrips, and hydrological and weather stations.
<i>vehicle (Conservation Act 1987)</i>	
<i>visitor</i>	For the purpose of Te Hiku CMS, visitors are people using areas and facilities managed by Te Papa Atawhai. They include adults and children from both Aotearoa and overseas, and they may arrange their own visit or use the services of a concessionaire.
<i>warranted officer (Conservation Act 1987, section 2)</i>	
<i>wetland (Conservation General Policy 2005)</i>	
<i>wild animal (Wild Animal Control Act 1977, section 2)</i>	
<i>wildlife (Wildlife Act 1953, section 2)</i>	

List of appendices in Volume II

APPENDIX NUMBER	BRIEF DESCRIPTION
1	Te Tiriti o Waitangi relationships in <i>Te Korowai</i>
2	Work or activities of the Department of Conservation Te Papa Atawhai that may meet the requirements of section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land-use consents
3	Important ecosystems and habitats within <i>Te Korowai</i>
4	Islands over 1 ha administered by the Department of Conservation Te Papa Atawhai in <i>Te Korowai</i>
5	Priority ecosystem units on Te Korowai lands and waters
6	Threats, pests and wild animals within <i>Te Korowai</i>
7	Threatened and at-risk indigenous flora and fauna in <i>Te Korowai</i>
8	Marine habitats and ecosystems in <i>Te Korowai</i>
9	Significant geological features and landforms in <i>Te Korowai</i>
10	Recreation destinations in <i>Te Korowai</i>
11	Prescriptions for management of visitor management zones
12	Historic sites managed by the Department of Conservation Te Papa Atawhai on Te Korowai lands and waters
13	Aircraft use zones
14	Taonga species in <i>Te Korowai</i>
15	The Korowai redress features



Rarawa Beach. Photo: Alannah Lett

